

**The complete sportsman; or, country gentleman's recreation ... / By
Thomas Fairfax, esq.**

Contributors

Fairfax, Thomas, active 1758.

Publication/Creation

London : Printed for J. Cooke, [1760?]

Persistent URL

<https://wellcomecollection.org/works/hg5dvkvt>

License and attribution

This work has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighbouring rights and is being made available under the Creative Commons, Public Domain Mark.

You can copy, modify, distribute and perform the work, even for commercial purposes, without asking permission.



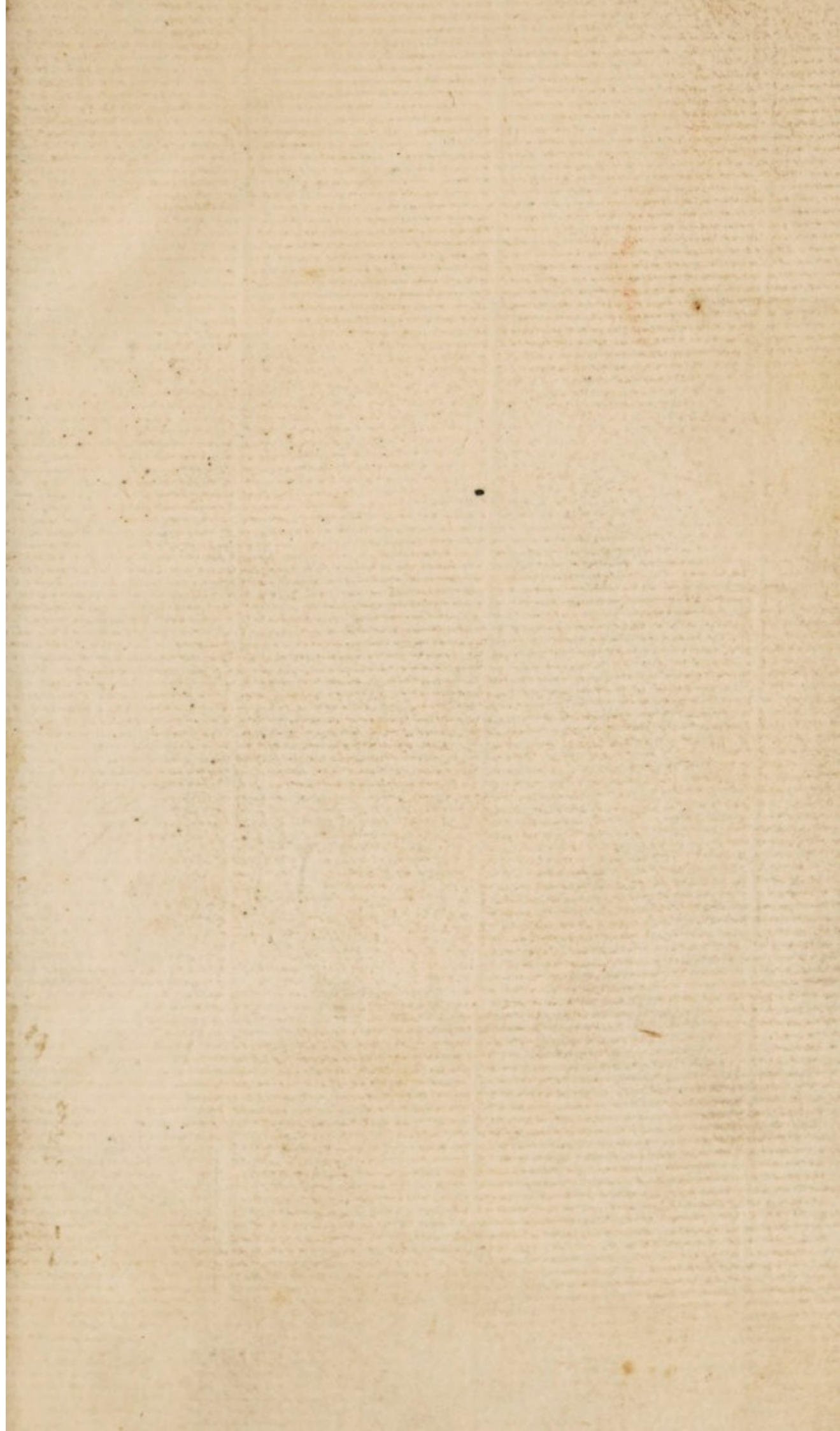
Wellcome Collection
183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE UK
T +44 (0)20 7611 8722
E library@wellcomecollection.org
<https://wellcomecollection.org>

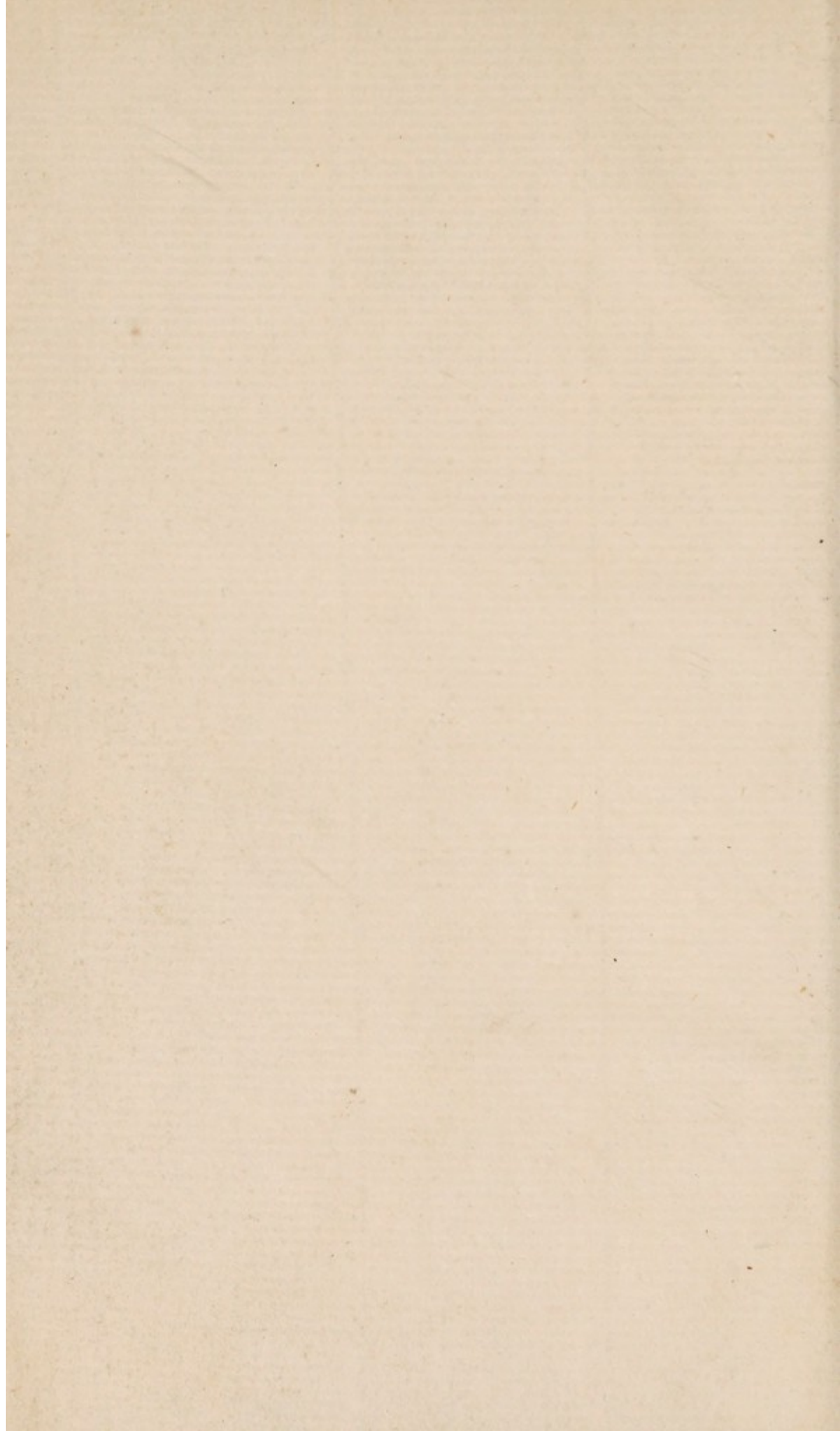



22, 136/3

O. XVII

18/f

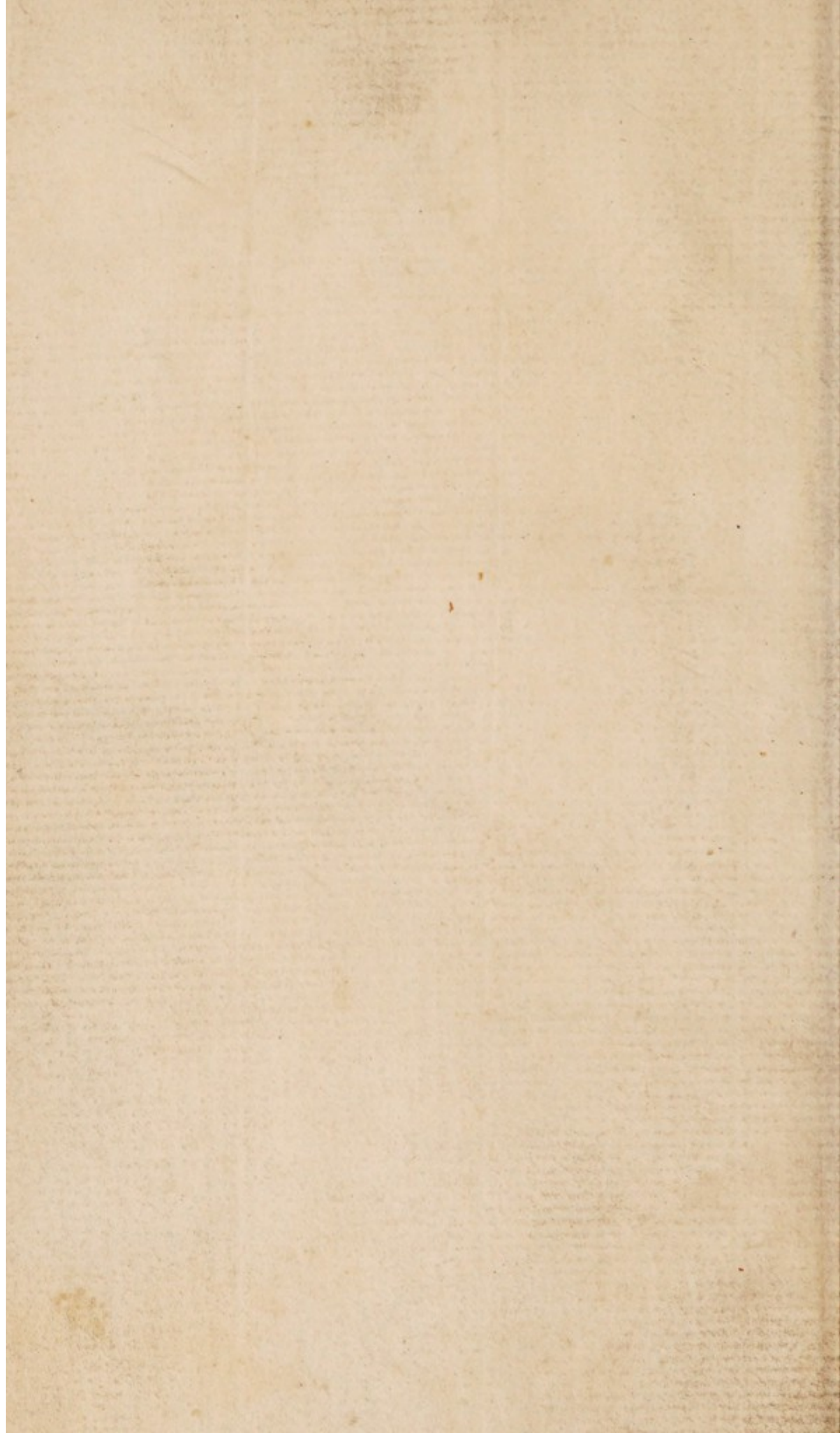






Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2018 with funding from
Wellcome Library

<https://archive.org/details/b30526437>



80154

THE
COMPLETE SPORTSMAN;
OR,
Country Gentleman's Recreation:

CONTAINING THE WHOLE ARTS

Of Breeding and Managing	Of Coursing.
Game Cocks, with the best	Of Breeding and Ordering
Methods of Fighting them	Dogs for the Gun or
Of Rearing and Backing	Chase, &c.
Colts 19	Of Angling in all its vari-
Of Managing Race-Horses,	ous Branches. . . . 232 . . . 123
Hunters, &c.	Of Breeding Pigeons, Rab-
Of Horse Racing.	bets, Canary Birds, &c.
Of Bowling.	Of finding the Haunts of
Of Hare-Hunting. 85	Partridges, Pheasants, and
Of Fox-Hunting. 90	all Manner of Game.
Of Buck-Hunting.	Of Shooting, and of Shoot-
Of Otter-Hunting.	ing Flying, &c.

TOGETHER

With several other equally curious ARTICLES, too numerous to be mentioned in this Title Page.

By THOMAS FAIRFAX, Esq.

*A Sportsman's Skill, whoever means to claim,
Must read our Book, and then he'll know his Game;
'Twill Bowlers, Coursers, Racers, Hunters, suit,
Or teach the Fowler flying Birds to shoot.*

L O N D O N:
Printed for J. COOKE, at Shakespeare's - Head,
in Pater-noster Row.

[1766?]



P R E F A C E.

THE Origin of innocent Diversions, and manly Exercises, is coeval with the first Formation of Human Society. Indeed these Diversions and Exercises existed in the World long before those States were formed, who afterwards made so great a Figure in History, although even under them, they were considered as honourable, and no way beneath the Characters of the greatest Heroes. The vital, the active Principle, which leads us to the Practice of innocent Diversions, is one of the noblest that can actuate the Heart of Man, namely EMULATION; or a Desire to excell others, while the Consequences resulting from them are more important than some will believe, or others acknowledge; for while they furnish a Relaxation from the Toils of Business, and an Alleviation of the Cares of Life, they add Vigour to the Mind; Health to the Body; and, in conformity with the delightful

Variations of the Seasons, mix our Pains and Pleasures together with a just and equal Temperance.

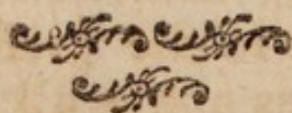
In the infant State of Human Society, the Exercises of Hunting, Fowling, and Fishing, were found necessary to support Individuals and their Families; but afterwards, when Refinement of Manners took Place of savage Rusticity; when Men began to know the Value of their own Importance, and considered themselves as distinguished above others, in Consequence of their Dexterity, or Ingenuity in manly Exercises; the Public became in a Manner interested, and it was found conducive both to the Security and Honour of the State, to annex distinguishing Marks of Favour to those whose Actions entitled them to it, in a more than ordinary Manner. To this laudable Principle may be ascribed the Origin of the Olympic Games among the Greeks, the public Shews among the Romans, and Knighterrantry, as practised by these Northern Nations of whom we are the lineal Descendants. The same Spirit of Emulation among Individuals, and the same Reasons of State, operate less or more on the human Mind, and rule all the various Forms of Government.

What was practised from Motives of Necessity in the early Ages of the World, was encouraged in more enlightened States, that Youth might be habituated in manly Exercises,
in

in order to wean them from that Effeminacy, which in a State of Indolence would have bewitched their Minds, and enervated their Bodies. But still there was something wanting, all the Rules prescribed for their Conduct were only Inroads, that it was reasonable to suppose that many of them would be forgotten as soon as told. The Use of Letters was either then not known, or but little understood, so that it was impossible for any Man to retain in his Memory what was only verbally dictated, unless he was something of an extraordinary Character, and far above the common Rank of his Fellow Creatures, a Favour not to be expected, and but seldom granted. Those who live in the present Age, have this peculiar Advantage, that Arts and Sciences are not only reduced to proper Systems, but every Thing is treated of in so plain a Manner, that almost every Person may understand them.

With Respect to the present Work, it has many Advantages above all that has been already published. The Rules laid down by the best Sportsmen have been carefully attended to, but they have been no farther countenanced or embraced, than was consistent with the Author's practical Knowledge of the different Subjects. Many Superfluities have been lopped off, the practical Knowledge of the different Subjects have been investigated from actual Experience, and those who are fond of indulging themselves

themselves in manly and innocent Amusements, will here find an Instructor, that will not deceive, but be of Service to them in all their Pursuits. The Author, though well acquainted with the Theory, has advanced nothing but what he knows to be consistent with Practice, and the Reader will meet with a more accurate Delineation of the Subject than can be found in one half of the Books extant, whilst his Practice will give him daily Proofs of its Utility. As such it is presented to the Public, nor is there the least Doubt of its meeting with their candid and favourable Reception.



T H E

THE
COMPLETE SPORTSMAN;
OR,
COUNTRY GENTLEMAN'S
RECREATION.

Of GAME-CKOCKS and COCK-FIGHTING.

Of the Choice of COCKS.

THE best properties for the choice of fighting cocks, is their shape, colour, and courage, and sharp heels or spurs. As to their shape, the middle sized ones are esteemed the best, as being soonest and easiest matched, as also the nimblest and generally of most courage: the small sized ones are weak and tedious in battle.

The Shape.

He should be of a proud and upright shape, with a small head, a quick large eye, with a strong back, his spurs long, rought, and sharp, a little bending inwards.

His Colour.

The grey pile, yellow pile, or red, with the black breast, is esteemed the best; the pied is not so good, and the white and dun worst of all.

If he is red about the head, like scarlet, it is a sign of strength, lust and courage; but if pale it is a sign of faintness and sickness.

His Courage.

His courage is shewed by his walk, treading, and pride of his going, and in pen by his frequent crowing: for the sharpness of his heel, or, as the cock masters call it, the narrow heel is only seen in his fighting, or the cock is said to be sharp heeled, or narrow heeled, which every time he rises, hits and draws blood of his adversary, gilding (as they term it) his spurs in blood, and every blow threatening the other's death.

Of Breeding.

The breeding cocks for battle, are much different from those of the dunghill; for they are like birds of prey, in which the female is of better esteem than the male; and so in the breeding be sure that the hens be right, that is, they must be of a right plume, as grey, grizzle, speckled or yellowish.

Black or brown is not amiss, their bodies large, and well pouked behind for large eggs, and well tufted on the crown, which shows good courage.

If they have weapons it is the better; also they must be of good courage, otherwise their chickens will not be good.

And it is observable, that the perfect hen from a dunghill-cock, will bring a good chicken; but the best cock from a dunghill-hen, can never get a good one; and the best season of the year to breed in, is from the increase of the moon in *February*, to the increase

increase of the moon in *March*, for a *March* bird is of far greater esteem than those bred at other times.

Let the pen where she sits be placed warm, with soft sweet straw therein for her nest, they being much tenderer than the dunghill hens; and permit no other fowl to come where she sits, for that will disturb her.

You should observe, if she be busy in turning her eggs (being a good sign) if not, do it at such times as she rises from her nest; and be sure that she has always meat and water by her, lest when she rises she should stay too long to seek food, and so her eggs should be chilled and spoiled.

Likewise in the place where she sits, let there be sand, gravel, and fine sifted ashes, to bathe and trim herself at pleasure.

In about three weeks she will hatch, and observe, that if she do not cover and keep the first warm till the rest are hatched, take those from her, and keep them warm in wool by the fire, till all are hatched, and then put them under her, keeping both the hen and chickens very warm, not suffering them to go abroad for three weeks or a month in the cold; for they are so tender, that cold will kill them.

Let them have plenty of food, as oatmeal, cheese-parings, fine small wheat, and the like, and a large room to walk in, with a boarded floor; for that of earth or brick, is too cold or moist.

After three or four weeks, let them walk in your court-yard, or garden, to pick worms, provided there are no sinks or puddles of stinking water, which is as bad as poison for them to drink, engendering corrupt diseases.

After this manner, keep them till you can know the cock chickens from the hens; and when you perceive their combs or wattles to appear, cut them off, anoint the sore with sweet butter, till well; and

this will make them have fine small, slender, and smooth heads ; whereas if you let the combs grow to their bigness, and then cut them off, it will cause them to have gouty thick heads, with great lumps ; neither is the flux of blood good, for the least loss of blood in a feathered fowl, is very dangerous.

Let the cock chickens go with their hens, till they begin to fight one with another ; but then separate them in several walks, and that walk is the best that is freest from the resort of others.

Let the feeding places be upon soft dry ground ; or upon boards ; for to breed them upon pavements, or on plaister floors, will make their beaks blunt and weak, so that it will hinder their holding fast.

Any white corn, as oats, barley or wheat, is good food for a cock in his walk ; so are toast or crusts of bread steeped in beer or wine, for it will both scour and cool them inwardly.

If your chickens begin to crow at about six months clear and loud, or at unseasonable times, it is a sign of cowardice and falshood, so that they are not worth the rearing ; for the true cock is very long before he can get his voice, and then he observes his hours.

To one cock four or five hens are sufficient ; for they are of so hot a nature, and will tread so much, that they soon consume their natural strength.

At two years old you may put a cock to the battle, as not being before perfect and compleat in every member ; for by suffering him to fight when his spurs are but warts, you may know his courage, but not his goodness.

You must also be circumspect about the perch whereon he roosteth ; for if it be too small in the gripe, or crooked, or so ill placed, that he cannot sit without stradling, it will make him uneven heeled, and by consequence no good striker.

The

The best way is to make a row of little perches, not above seven or eight inches long, and about a foot from the ground, so that with ease they may go up to them; and being set, must have their legs close, the shortness of the perch not admitting otherwise; and it is a maxim, *He that is a close sitter is always a narrow striker.*

You must always be careful, that when your cock doth leap from the perch, the ground be soft whereupon he lighteth; for hard ground causeth goutiness.

For I am the Surge
Of dieting and ordering Cocks.

For dieting and ordering a cock for the battle, which is the principal thing, observe these directions.

The best time to take up your cocks, is the latter end of *August*, and having viewed them well, and they are sound, hard feathered, and full summed, put them in several pens.

Their pens should be made of close boards, well joined together all but the forepart, which must be made open like a grate, the bars about two inches apart, and before the grate two large troughs of soft wood, the one for water, and the other for meat; the door of the grate to be made to lift up and down, and of such largeness, as with ease to put the cock in, and take him out, and to clean the pen daily to keep it sweet.

The pen should be at least three feet high, and two feet square, and of these many may be joined in one front, according to the use you have for them.

For the first three or four days they are put in their pens, feed them only with old wheat bread, the crust pared away, and cut into little bits, with which feed them at sun-rising, and sun-set, giving them

them about a handful at a time; and be sure let him not be without good fresh water.

After they have been thus fed four days, and their crops cleared of the corn, worms, and other coarse feeding, in the morning take them out of the pens, putting a pair of hots upon each of their heels, which hots are soft bombasted rolls of leather, covering their spurs, that they cannot hurt or bruise one another, so setting them down upon the grass, (that is two at a time) let them fight and baffle one another for a good while, provided they do not wound or draw blood of each other, and this is called sparring of cocks.

The reason of thus exercising them, is to chase and heat the bodies, to break the fat and glut within them, and cause it to come away.

Your cocks being sparred sufficiently, and that you see them pant and grow weary, take them up and untie their hots; then being provided with deep straw baskets made for that purpose, with sweet soft straw to the middle, put into each basket a cock, covering him over with the like straw to the top; then put on the lid close, so let him sweat and stowe till the evening; but before you put him into the basket, give him a pretty big lump of sweet butter, with white sugar candy, and rosemary finely chopped, and this scouring well bring away his grease, and breed breath and strength.

In the evening, about four or five of the clock, take them out of the stoving basket, and licking their heads and eyes all over, put them into the pens, then take a good handful of bread cut small, put it to each in their troughs, and piss therein, so that the cock may take the bread out of the warm urine, and this will scour and cleanse both the head and the body extremely.

The bread that you must now and afterwards give them,

them, must not be fine white bread, but a sort made for that purpose, after this manner.

Take half a peck of wheat meal, and the like quantity of fine oatmeal; mix these together, and knead them in a stiff paste, with ale, the whites of twelve eggs, and half a pound of butter.

This paste being well wrought, make it into broad thin cakes, and being three or four days old, and the blister rings cut away, cut it into little square bits and give it to the cocks.

Having fed your cocks thus, after their sparring, the next day let them rest, only give them their ordinary feeding of bread and water; then the next day (which is the sparring) take them into a fair, even, green close, there set down one of them, and having a dunghill cock in your arms, show it him, running from him, enticing him to follow you; and so chase him up and down for half an hour, suffering him now and then to have a stroke at him; and when you see him well heated and panteth, take him up, and carry him to his pen, and there give him his scouring. Take fresh butter, half a pound; beat it in a mortar, with the herbs of grace, hyssop, and rosemary, until the herbs are incorporated therein, and that the butter is brought to a green salve; and of this give the cock a roll or two, as big as he can well swallow, then stöve him in the basket, as aforesaid, until the evening: then take him out, put him in his pen, and feed him as above directed.

The next day let him rest and feed, and the day following again spar him; and this method observe every other day for the first fortnight, to spar or chase him, as being the most natural and kindest heats; but forget not to give him a scouring after every heat, as aforesaid, for the breaking and cleansing him from grease, glut and filth, which lying in his body causeth purfiness

purfiness and faintness, so that he cannot stand out the latter end of a battle.

Thus having fed your cocks the first fortnight, observe the same rules the next fortnight; but, for a week do not spar him, or give him heats above twice a week, so that three or four times in a fortnight will be sufficient: and each time stove and scour him according to his heats, long heats requiring longer stoving, as also greater scouring.

But if you find him in good breath, and that he requires but slight heats, then stove him the less, and give him the less scouring.

For the third fortnight, which compleats the six weeks, feed him as aforesaid, but spar him not at all, for fear of making his head tender and sore, neither give him any violent exercise, but only two or three times in the fortnight, let him moderately be chased up and down, to maintain his wind; and now and then cuff a cock; which you must hold in your hands; which done, give him his scouring, well rolled up in powder of brown sugar candy, for the cock being now come to his perfect health, and clear from filth in his body, the sugar prevents that sickness which the scouring would then cause, and also strengthens nature against the medicine.

Matching of fighting Cocks.

Your six weeks feeding being finished, and finding your cock in lust and breath, he is fit to fight, always observing, that he hath at least three days rest before fighting, and be well emptied of meat before you bring him into the pit.

Being brought into the pit, your chief care must be in the matching him, in which consists the greatest glory of a cock-master, therefore in your matching there are but two things to be considered, *viz.* the strength of cocks, and the length of cocks.

Now

Now for the knowledge of these, there are two rules: as for his strength, it is known by the thickness of his body, that cock being held strongest which is largest in the girth; which may be easily known by the measuring him with your fingers: as for his length, it is easily known by griping him about the middle, causing him to stretch forth his legs; but if you are doubtful of losing in one, yet are sure to gain in the other, you may venture to match.

Your cock being matched thus, prepare him to the battle: first, with a fine pair of cock-shears, cut off his mane close to the neck, from his head to the setting on of his shoulders; then clip off all the feathers from his tail close to his rump, which the more scarlet it appears, the better state of body he is in: then take his wings, extending them forth by the first feather, clip the rest slopewise, with sharp points, that in his rising he may endanger the eyes of his adversary; then, with a sharp knife, scrape smooth and sharpen his beak, and also smooth and sharpen his spurs; and lastly, see that there be no feathers about the crown of his head for his adversary to take hold of; then, with your spittle, moisten his head all over, and so turn him into the pit to try his fortune.

The battle being ended, your first business must be to search his wounds, and such as you find, suck out the blood with your mouth; then wash them with warm urine to keep them from rankling; and presently give him a bit or two of your best scouring, and so stowe him up as hot as you can for that night; and in the morning take him forth, and if you see his head much swelled, suck it with your mouth, as aforesaid, and bathe it with warm urine.

Then having the powder of the herb *Robert*, well dried, and finely sifted, pounce all the sore places therewith, and give him a good handful of bread to eat, out of warm urine, and then put him into the
stove

stove again, as before directed, being very careful that no air come to him till the swelling is gone; but twice a day suck and dress him, feed him as aforesaid.

But if your cock has received any hurt in his eye, then take a leaf or two of right ground-ivy, that is, such as grows in little tufts in the bottom of hedges; chew it in your mouth very well, sucking out the juice, which squirting into his eye two or three times, will soon cure it, provided the sight is not pierced; and it will also preserve the eye from films, flaws, warts, &c.

If your cock hath veined himself, either by narrow striking, or other cross blow, find out the wound, and presently bind into it the soft down of a hare, and it will both staunch it, and cure it.

After your wounded cocks are put forth to their walks, as being fit to go abroad, and when you come to visit them in about a month or two after, if you find any hard swelled bunches about their heads, blackish at one end, it is a sign of unsound cores; and then with a sharp pen-knife open them, and crush out the said cores; then suck out all the corruption, and fill the whole with fresh butter, which will perfect the cure.

Of COLTS.

COLT, a word in general signifying the male and female of the horse kind; the first likewise for distinction sake, being called a horse colt, and the other a filly.

After the colts have been foaled, you may suffer them to run with the mare till about *Michaelmas*, sooner or later, according as the cold weather comes in, then they must be veined, after which let them be kept in a convenient house, with a low rack and manger

manger for their hay and oats, which must be sweet and good; with a little wheaten bran mixed with the oats, to cause them to drink and to keep their bodies open.

Further, that colts thus fed with grain do not grow thickish upon their legs, but grow broader and better knit than if they had eaten nothing but hay and bran, and will endure fatigue the better.

But above all, they must be kept from wet and cold, which are the hurtfullest things imaginable to them, nothing being more tender than they are.

For proof of this, take a Spanish stallion, and let him cover two mares, which for age, beauty and comeliness, may admit of no difference between them; and if they be both horse colts, or both fillies, which is one and the same thing, let one run abroad, and the other be housed, every winter, kept warm, and ordinarily attended, as aforesaid; and that colt that has been kept abroad shall have large fleshy shoulders, flabby and gouty legs, weak pasterns, and ill hoofs; and shall be a dull, heavy jade, in comparison to the other which is housed, and orderly kept as before; and which will have a fine forehead, be well shaped, have good legs and hoofs, and be of a good strength and spirit: by which you may know, that to have the finest stallion, and the beautifullest mare, is nothing, if they are spoiled in breeding up.

It is worth observation, that some foals, under six months old, though their dams yield abundance of milk, yet decay daily, and have a cough, proceeding from certain pellicles, or skins that breed in their stomachs, which obstruct their breathing, and at last destroy them entirely.

To remedy this malady, take the bag wherein the colt was foaled, dry it, and give them as much of it in milk as you can take up with three fingers: but

but if you have not preserved the bag, procure the lungs of a young fox, and use it instead of the afore-said powder.

It will be proper to let the colts play an hour or two, in some court-yard or the like place, when it is fair weather, provided you put them up again carefully, and see that they take no harm.

When the winter is spent, turn them into some dry ground, where the grass is short and sweet, and where there is good water that they may drink at pleasure; for it is not necessary that a colt should fill his belly immediately, like a horse that labours hard.

The next winter you may take them into the house, and use them just as your other horses; but let not your horses, colts and fillies be kept together, after the first year.

This method may be observed every summer and winter, till you break them, which you may do after they are three years old; and it will be a very easy thing, if you observe the afore-said method of housing them, for ordering them the second year as you do other horses, that they will be so tame and gentle, that you need not fear their plunging, leaping, kicking, or the like coltish tricks; for they will take the saddle quietly.

Take notice, that as yearlings must be kept abroad together, so those of two years old together; the like for those of three yearlings, which ordered is most agreeable to them.

In order to make him endure the saddle the better, the way to make it familiar to him will be, by clapping the saddle with your hand as it stands upon his back, by striking it, and swaying upon it, dangling the stirrups by his sides, rubbing them against his sides, and making much of him, and bring him to be familiar with all things about him; as straining
the

the crupper, fastening and loosening the girths, and taking up and letting out the stirrups.

Then as to the mouthing of him, when he will trot with the saddle obediently, wash a trench of a full mouth, and put the same into his mouth, throwing the reins over the fore part of the saddle, so that he may have a full feeling of it; then put on a martingal, buckled at such a length, that he may but just feel it when he jirks up his head; then take a broad piece of leather and put it about his neck, and make the ends of it fast by platting of it, or some other way, at the withers, and the middle part before his weasand, about two handfuls below the thropple, betwixt the leather and his neck: let the martingal pass so, that when at any time he offers to duck, or throw down his head, the cavesson being placed upon the tender gristle of his nose, may correct and punish him; which will make him bring his head to, and form him to an absolute rein; then trot him abroad, and if you find the reins or martingal grow slack, straiten them, for when there is no feeling, there is no virtue.

Of BACKING COLTS.

BACKING a colt, after he has been exercised some time morning and evening, and you find him obedient, as directed under the head of colt; then take him to some ploughed grounds, the lighter the better, and when you have made him trot a good pace about it in your hand, and thereby taking him from all his wantonness; see whether your tackling be firm and good, and every thing in it's true and proper place; when having one stay to his head, and governing the chafing rein, you may take his back, yet not suddenly, but by degrees, with divers heavings,

heavings, and half risings, which if he endure patiently, then settle yourself; but if he shrink and dislike, then forbear to mount, and chafe him about again, and then offer to mount, and do this till he be willing to receive you.

After you are settled, receive your stirrups, and cherish him, put your toes forward, let him that stays his head, lead him forward half a dozen paces, then cherish him again, shake and move yourself on the saddle, then let the stayer of his head, remove his hand a little from the cavesson; as you thrust your toes forward, let him move him forward with his rein, till you have made him apprehend your own motion of the body, and foot, which must go equally together, and with spirit also that he will go forward without the others assistance, and stay upon the restrain of your own hands; then cherish him, and give him grass and bread to eat, alight from his back, mount and unmount twice or thrice together, ever mixing them with cherishings; thus exercise him, till he be made perfect in going forward and standing still at pleasure; this being done, the long rein may be laid aside, and the band about the neck, and only use the trenches and cavesson with the martingal, and let the groom lead the way before on another horse, going only strait forwards, and make him stand still when you please, which will soon be effected by trotting after another horse, sometimes equally with him, sometimes before, so that he fix upon no certainty but your own pleasure, and be sure to have regard to the well carriage of his neck, and head, and as the martingal slackens, so straiten it from time to time.

Of HORSES.

THE horse should have a broad forehead, a great eye, a lean head; thin, slender, lean, wide jaws; a long, high, rearing neck; rearing withers; a broad deep chest and body, upright pasterns and narrow hoofs.

There are very many things relating to a horse, and very necessary to be known, which will be found under their proper articles; only there are a few which are not so conveniently reducible under such heads, which must have room here.

To begin with turning a horse to grafs; you ought eight or nine days before you do it, to take blood of him; next day after, give him the drink called *diapente*, and in a day or two after his drink, abate of his cloaths by degrees, before you turn him out, lest by doing them on a sudden he should take cold; and curry him not at all after his cloaths are taken off, but let him stand in his dust, for that will keep him warm; neither is it proper to put him out till the middle of *May*, at soonest, for till that time grafs will not have bite enough; and let the day be warm, sun-shine, and about ten o'clock, for horse pampered in stables, and kept close, will be very subject to take cold.

To take him up from grafs, he must be very dry, else he will be subject to be scabby; and that not later than *Bartholomew-tide*, when the season begins to let cold dews fall, that causes much harm to your horse; and then also the heart of the grafs begins to fail, insomuch, that the grafs which he then feeds upon breeds no good nourishment, but gross, phlegmatic, and cold humours, which putrify and corrupt the blood; and take him up very quickly, for fear of melting his grease, his fat gotten at grafs being very tender; then a day or two after he is in the stable,
let

let him be shod, let blood, and drenched, which will prevent the staggers, yellows, and the like distempers, occasioned by the gall and spleen, which the heart and strength of the grasse through the rankness of the blood, engenders in the body.

But the curious, after they have taken the horse into the stable, before they either bleed or drench him, in a hot, sun-shining day, take him out into a convenient place, and there trim him; and then taking ordinary washing soap, anoint his head and every part of him with it all over, having care that none gets into his eyes and ears, then they wash him very well all over with warm water, and wipe him with a warm linen cloth, and afterwards rub him dry with woollen cloths; then soap him all over again, especially his main and tail, and wash him very clean with back lee, with a wisp of woollen cloth, and when they have sufficiently cleansed him, dry him as before, and lead him into the stable; let him be cleansed with a clean, thin, soft cloth.

There are two or three things more to be added that are of some significancy in reference to this noble creature, and the first is, to make a horse follow his master, and to find him out and challenge him amongst ever so many people.

Take a pound of oatmeal, to which put a quarter of a pound of honey, and half a pound of liquorice, make a little cake thereof, and put it into your bosom next to your naked skin, and then run and labour yourself till you sweat, and so rub all your sweat upon your cake; then keep the horse fasting a day and a night, and give it him to eat, which done, turn him loose, and he shall not only follow you, but also hunt and seek you out when he has lost you, and when he comes to you, spit in his mouth,

mouth, anoint his tongue with your spittle, and thus doing, he will never forsake you.

Another thing is to shew how to make a horse look young: take a crooked iron, no bigger than a wheat corn, and having made it red hot, burn a little black hole in the tops of the two outermost teeth, of each side the nether chap before, next to the tusshes where the mark is worn out, then pick it with an awl blade, and make the shell fine and thin; then with a sharp scraping-iron make all his teeth white and clean; this done, take a fine lancet, and about the hollows of the horse's eyes, which are shrunk down, make a little hole only through the skin, and put in the quill of a raven or crow, and blow the skin full of wind; then take the quill out, lay your finger on the hole a little while, and the wind will stay in, and he will look as youthful as if he were but five years old.

Of HORSE-FEEDERS, or GROOMS.

THERE are many observations to be made by one engaged in this office, in order to perform it well, especially when he hath the care of running-horses, but we shall only mention a few.

1. As to meat or drink, if there be any such or other nourishment that he knows good for a horse, which yet the best refuses, you must not thrust it violently upon him, but by gentle enticements win him thereto, tempting him when he is most hungry or most dry; if he get but a bit at a time, he will soon increase to a greater quantity.

Ever let him have less than he desires; and that he may be brought the sooner to it, mix the meat he loves best with that he loves worst, till both be alike familiar

familiar, so shall he be a stranger to nothing that is good and wholesome.

2. If he finds his horse subject to stiffness and lameness, to the furbate, or to tenderness of feet, then he should give him his heat upon smooth carpet earth, or forbear strong grounds, hard highways, cross-ruts and furrows, till extremity compel him.

3. For the condition of a horse's body, he must account that the strongest state which is the highest and least of flesh, so it be good, hard, without inward foul-fullness, to be the best and most proper for the performing of matches: and herein you must consider, first, the shape of a horse's body, there being some that are round, plump and close kn't together, which will appear fat and well shaped, when they are lean and in poverty: while others that are raw-boned, slender, and loose knit, will appear lean and deformed, when they are fat, foul, and full of gross humours.

So likewise for their inclinations: for some horses at the first, feed outwardly, and carry a thick rib, when they are inwardly as thin as may be; whereas others appear lean to the eye, when they are only grease.

In which case the feeder has two helps to advantage his knowledge, the outward and the inward one.

4. The first is, the outward handling and feeling the horse's body all over his ribs, but particularly upon his short and hindermost ribs, and if his flesh generally handle soft and loose, and the fingers sink therein as in down, he is foul without all question; but if he be hard and firm, and only soft upon the hindermost rib, he has grease and foul matter within him, which must be voided, whatever comes of it. And for the inward help, that is only sharp exercise
and

and strong scouring, the first to dissolve, and the latter to bring it away.

5. It is the feeder's business to observe the horse's stones, for if they hang downwards, or low from his body he is out of lust and heat, and is either sick of grease or other foul humours; but in case they lie close trussed up, and hid in a small room, then he is healthful, and in good plight.

6. As to the limbs, the feeder or groom must always before he runs any match or fore heat, bathe his legs from the knees and gambrels downwards, either with clarified dog's grease, (which is the best) or trotter oil, that is the next to it, or else the best hog's grease, which is sufficient, and work it in well with his hands, not with fire, for what he gets not in the first night, will be got in the next morning, and what is not got in then, will be got in when he comes to uncloath at the end of the course; so that the ointment need be used but once, but the rubbing as often as there is opportunity.

7. The feeder may in any of the latter fortnight's of a running horse's feeding, if he finds him clear, and his grease consumed, about six in the evening, give him water in a reasonable quantity made luke-warm, keeping him fasting for an hour after: also, if through the unseasonableness of the weather you cannot water him abroad, then at your own watering hours you are to do it in the house, with warm water, and an handful of wheat-meal, bran, or oat-meal, finely powdered, (which last is the best) put into the water; which is very wholesome.

8. The rider is farther to note, that if the ground whereon the horse is to run his match, be dangerous, and apt for bad accidents, as strains, over-reaches, sinew-bruises, and the like, that then he is not bound to give him his heats thereon, but having made him acquainted with the nature thereof, let

him to take part of the course, as a mile, two or three, according to the goodness of the ground, and so run him forth again, which are called turning-heats, provided always he ends his heat at the weighing-post, and make not his course less, but more in quantity than he must run.

If for some special causes he likes no part of the course, he may often, but not ever, give his heat upon any other ground about any spacious and large field, where the horse may lay down his body and run at pleasure.

9. He must have special regard to all his airings, breathings, and other exercises whatever; to the sweating of the horse, and the occasion, as if he sweat on little or no occasion, as walking a foot-pace, standing still in the stable, and the like; this shews that the horse is faint, foul fed, and wants exercise; but if upon good occasions, as strong heats, great labours, and the like, he sweat, and it is a white froth like soap-suds, he is inwardly foul, and also wants exercise. Again, if the sweat be black, and as it were only water thrown upon him, without any frothiness, then he is cleansed, and in good lust, and good case, and may be rid without any danger.

10. And lastly, he should observe his hair in general, but especially on his neck, and those parts that are uncovered, for if they lie sleek, and smooth, and close, holding the beauty of their natural colour, the horse is in good case, but if rough and staring, or discoloured, he must be inwardly cold at heart, and wants both cloaths and warm keeping.

Of HORSE SHOES.

OF these there are several sorts: 1. That called the planch-shoe, or pancelet, which makes a good foot, and a bad leg, by reason it causes the foot

to grow beyond the measure of the leg; though for a weak heel it is exceeding good, and will last longer than any shoe, being borrowed from the moil, that has weak heels and frushes, to keep the feet from stones and gravel.

2. Shoes with calkins, which though they be intended to secure the horse from sliding, yet they do him more harm than good, whereby many times he wrenches his foot, or strains some sinews, more especially upon stony ways, where the stones will not suffer his calkins to enter, the foot slips with more violence; though some do not think a horse well shod unless all his shoes be made with calkins, either single or double; however, the double ones are less hurtful, for he will tread evenner with them than with single calkins, but they must not be over long, or sharp pointed, but rather short and flat.

3. There are shoes for rings, which were first invented to make a horse lift his feet high, though an unhandsome sight; this defect is incident to most horses that have not sound hoofs, for tender feet fear to touch the ground that is hard: but what is intended for a remedy, proves a prejudice to the horse, by adding high calkins, or else these rings to his shoes, for by that means he is made to have weaker heels than before.

4. Shoes with swelling welts or borders round about them, are used in *Germany*, &c. which being higher than the heads of the nails, save them from wearing; and these are the best lasting shoes, if made of well-tempered stuff, for they wear equally in all parts, and the horse treads equally upon them.

5. Others that use to travel mountains where smiths are not so easily to be met with, carry shoes about them with vices, whereby they fasten them to the

horse's hoof without the help of the hammer or nail, notwithstanding it is more for shew than any good service; for though this sort of shoe may save his feet from stones, yet it so pinches his hoof, that he goes with pain, and perhaps injures it more than the stones do: therefore upon such emergent occasions, it is better to make use of a joint-shoe, which is made of two pieces, with a flat rivet-nail joining them together in the toe, so that you may make it both wide and narrow to serve any foot.

6. The pattern-shoe, is necessary for a horse that is burnt in the hip, stifle, or shoulder, which will cause him to bear upon that leg the grief is on, and consequently use it the better.

7. A shoe proper for flat feet.

8. The panton, or pantacle-shoe, which opens the heels, and helps hoof binding.

These are of admirable use, in regard that they never shift upon the feet, and continue firm in one place.

9. And lastly, the half panton shoe.

Of HORSE RACING.

As to the method of ordering *Running-Horses*, or what is called *keeping*, it will be found under the article *running horses*, and therefore we will only here suppose a horse set to run for a plate, and that the hour of starting is at hand, when the drum beats or the trumpets sound, according to the custom of the place where you run, to give notice for stripping and weighing; be sure in the first place, to keep out the wind, and to strengthen you: if you are light, that you must carry weight, let it be equally quilted in your waistcoat; but it is better if you are just weight, for then you have no more to do than just to dress you, according to your own fancy;
your

your cloaths should be of coloured silk, or of white holland, as being very advantageous to the spectators; your waistcoat and drawers must be made close to your body, and on your head a little cap tied on; let your boots be gartered up fast, and your spurs must be of good metal; then mount and come to the starting place, where going off briskly or gently, as occasion requires, make your horse perform the course or heat, according to your intended design; particularly, if you would win the same, and that your horse excels in goodness more than speed, start him roundly, and run him to the very top of what he can do, during the whole course or heat, and by that means, if the horse you run against be not so good at the bottom, though he has more speed, you will beat him, because he will run off it a great way before he comes to the end. But on the contrary, if your horse's talent be speed, all that you can do is to wait on the other horse, and keep behind till you come almost to the stand, and then endeavour to give a loose by him. Sometimes when you are to run more heats than one, it will be your policy to lose a heat; and in that case you must for the easing and safeguard of your horse, lie behind as much as you can, provided you bring him in within distance.

The posture to be observed is, that you place yourself upon your twist, with your knees firm, and your stirrups just at such a length, that your feet, when they are thrust home in them, you can raise yourself a little in the saddle, for your legs, without that allowance, will not be firm when you come to run; the counter-poise of your body must be forward, to facilitate your horse's running, and your elbows must be close to your body; be sure above all things, that you do not incommode your horse by swaggering this or that way, as some do,

for since weight is a great matter in running, and that a troublesome rider is as bad as so much more weight, there is no need to say how necessary it is to take great care of your seat and hand; you must therefore beware of holding yourself by the bridle, or of jobbing your horse's mouth upon any occasion; you must take your right rein in the same hand, holding up *horse*, &c. as you find it necessary, and every now and then remove the bridle in his mouth. But these things are best learned by experience and practice.

A plate being ran for by heats, every man that rides must be just weight at starting, in great scales for that purpose, and at the end of the same heat, for if you want of your weight at coming in, you shall lose your heat, though you are the first horse; you have half an hour between the first and second, to rub your horses, and at the warning of the drum and trumpet again, you mount, &c. as before, and so till all is done, which is three, and sometimes three heats and a course.

If you do not breed *racers* yourself, be sure you buy no horse that has not extraordinary good blood in his veins, for the charge of keeping is great, and a good one eats no more than a bad, and requires no more attendance; some to save twenty or thirty guineas in the price of a young *horse*, have lost hundreds by him afterwards.

A *horse* that you have tried once or twice at a twelve stone plate, you may be sure will make an extraordinary good hunter; and you are to observe, that the posture, manner of riding, &c. is the same in a match as in a plate race, only that there being but a single course to be run, you must push for all at that one time: whereas when there are several heats, there is more saving, and variety of play.

Of

Of HUNTING HORSES.

A HORSE designed for this manly exercise, his shape should be generally strong and well knit together, making equal proportions; for you are to observe, that which has an unequal shape shews weakness, so equal ones shew strength and durance; and what we call unequal, are a great head and a little neck; a big body and a thick buttock; a large limb to a little foot, &c. *A hunting horse*, while he is at rest, let him have all the quietness that may be; let him have much meat, much litter, much dressing, and water even by him; let him sleep as long as he pleases; keep him to dung rather soft than hard, and look that it be well coloured, and bright, for darkness shews grease, redness, and inward heat: and after his usual scourings, let him have exercises, and mashes of sweet malt, or let bread, or clean beans, or beans and wheat mixed together, be his best food, and beans and oats the most extraordinary.

You may furnish yourself with a horse for hunting at some of our fairs, which should have as near as can be, the following shapes.

A *head* lean, large, and long; a *chaul* thin and open ears, small, and picked, or, if they be somewhat long, provided they stand upright, like those of a fox, it is usually a sign of mettle and toughness.

His *forehead* long and broad, not flat, and as it is usually termed hare-faced, rising in the midst like that of a hare, the feather being placed above the top of his eye; the contrary being thought by some to be a token of blindness.

His eyes full, large and bright; his nostrils wide and red within, for an open nostril is a sign of a good wind.

His *mouth* large, deep in the wikes and hairy; his *thropple*, *weasand*, or *wind-pipe*, big, loose and strait, when he is reined in with the bridle; for if when he bridles, it bends like a bow, (which is called *cock-throppled*) it very much hinders the free passage of his wind.

His head must be set on to his neck, that a space may be felt between his neck and his chaul; for to be bull-necked is uncomely to sight, and also prejudicial to the horse's wind.

His crest should be firm, thin, and well-risen, his neck long and strait, yet not loose and pliant, which the northern-men term *withy-cragged*.

His breast strong and broad, his chest deep, his chine short, his body large and close shut up to the huckle-bone.

His ribs round like a barrel, his belly being hid within them.

His fillets large, his buttocks rather oval than broad, being well let down to the gascoins, his cambrels upright, and not bending, which some call *suckle-hoghed*; though some look upon this to be a sign of toughness and speed.

His legs clean, flat, and strait; his joints short, well knit, and upright, especially betwixt the pasterns and the hoofs, having but little hair on his fetlocks; his hoofs black, strong, and hollow, and rather long and narrow, than big and flat.

Lastly, his mane and tail should be long and thin, rather than thick, which is counted by some a mark of dullness.

As to marks or colours, though they do not absolutely give testimony unto us of a *horse's* goodness, yet they, as well as his shape, do intimate to us, in some part, his disposition and qualities; the hair itself does oftentimes receive the variation of its colour,

four, from the different temperature of the subject out of which it is produced.

And some do not scruple to affirm, that where-ever you meet with a horse that has no white about him, especially in his forehead, though he be otherwise of the best reputed colours, as bay, black, sorrel, he is of a dogged and fullen disposition, especially if he have a small pink eye, and a narrow face, with a nose bending like a hawk's bill.

The Age, &c. of a HUNTER.

HAVING procured a *horse* suitable to the former descriptions, or your own satisfaction at least, and which is supposed to be already grounded in the fundamentals of his art, being taught such obedience, as that he will readily answer to the horseman's helps and corrections both of the bridle and hand, the voice, the calf of the leg, and the spurs, that he knows how to make his way forward, and hath gained a true temper of mouth, and a right placing of his head, and that he hath learned to stop, and turn readily: for unless he has been perfectly taught these things, he can never proceed effectually.

The *horse* being thus prepared, should be five years old, and well wayed before you begin to hunt him; for though it is customary with some to hunt at four years old, yet at that age his joints not being well knit, nor he attained to his best strength and courage, he is unable to perform any work of speed and roughness, and will be in great danger of strains, and other maladies, and also a daunting of his spirits, and abating his natural courage.

Your *horse* being full five, you may, if you please, put him to graze from the middle of *May*, till *Bartholomew-tide*, for then the season will be so hot, it will not be convenient to work him.

Bartholomew-tide being now come, and the pride and strength of the grafs, nipped by the severe frosts and cold dews, so that the nourishment of it turns to raw crudities, and the coldness in the night abates as much of his flesh and lust as he gets in a day: take him from grafs while his coat lies smooth and sleek.

Having brought him home, let your groom set him up that night in some secure and spacious house, where he may evacuate his body, and the next day stable him.

The first fortnight's DIET for a HUNTING HORSE; or the ordering of a HUNTER, for the first fortnight.

Your horse being supposed to have evacuated all his grafs, and his shoes so well settled to his feet, that he may be fit to be ridden abroad without danger: I shall now, in a more particular manner, direct an unexperienced groom how he ought to proceed to order his horse according to art.

First, he ought to visit his horse early in the morning, to wit, by five o'clock in summer, and six in winter; and having put up his litter under his stall, and made clean his stables, to feel his ribs, his chaul, and his flank, they being the principal signs by which he must learn to judge of the good or ill state of a horse's body.

He ought to lay his hands on his short ribs, near the flank, and if his fat feels to be exceeding soft and tender, and to yield as it were under his hand, then he may be confident it is unsound, and that the least violent labour or travel will dissolve it; which being dissolved before it be hardened by good diet, if it be not then removed by scouring, the fat or grease belonging to the outward parts of the body will fall down into his heels, and so cause goutiness and swelling:

After

After, by feeling on his ribs, he has found his fat soft and unsound, then let him feel his chaul; and if he finds any fleshy substance, or great round kernels or knots, he may be assured that as his outward fat has been unsound, so inwardly he is full of glut, and purfive, by means of gross humours cleaving to the hollow places of his lungs, &c.

This fat is to be enseamed and hardened by moderate exercise, warm cloathing, and gentle phyfic, to cleanse away his inward glut.

The same observations must be made from the flank, which will always be found to correspond with his ribs and chaul, for till it is drawn, it will feel thick to your gripe, but when he is enseamed you will perceive nothing but two thin skins; and by these three observations of the rib, flank, and chaps, you may at any time pass an indifferent judgment of the horse's good or bad condition.

Having made these remarks on your horses state and condition of body, then sift a handful or two (but not more) of good old oats, and give them to him to preserve his stomach from cold humours which might oppress it by drinking fasting, and likewise to make him drink the better.

When he hath eaten them, pull off his collar, and rub his head, face, ears, and nape of the neck, with a clean rubbing cloth made of hemp, for it is sovereign for the head, and dissolves all gross and filthy humours.

Then take a naffle, and wash it in clean water, and put it on his head, drawing the rein through the headstall to prevent his slipping it over his head, and so tie him up to the rack, and dress him thus:

First, take a curry comb, suitable to your horse's skin, in your right hand; that is, if the coat of your horse be short and smooth, then must the curry-comb be blunt; but if it be long and rough, then

the teeth must be long and sharp ; standing with your face opposite the horse's, hold the left cheek of the head-stall in your left-hand, and curry him with a good hand from the root of his ears, all along his neck to his shoulders ; then go over all his body with a more moderate hand ; then curry his buttocks down to the hinder cambrel with a hard hand again ; then change your hand, and laying your right arm over his back, join your right side to his left, and so curry him gently from the top of his withers, to the lower part of his shoulder, every now and then fetching your stroke over the left side of his breast, and so curry him down to the knee, but no farther.

Then curry him well under his belly, near his fore bowels, and in a word, all over very well, his legs under the knees and cambrels only excepted ; and as you dress his left side, so must you the right also.

In doing this, take notice where your horse keeps a rigging up and down, biting the rack staves, and now and then offering to snap at you, or lifting up his leg to strike at you, when you are currying him ; if he do, it is an apparent sign, that the roughness of the comb displeases him, and therefore the teeth of it is to be filed more blunt ; but if you perceive he plays these or such like tricks through wantonness, and the pleasure he takes in the friction, then you should every now and then correct him with your whip gently for his waggishness.

This currying is only to raise the dust, therefore, after the horse has been thus curried, take either an horse-tail nailed to an handle, or a clean dusting cloth of cotton, and with it strike off the loose dust that the curry comb has raised.

Then dress him all over with the *French* brush, both head, body, and legs, to the very fetlocks, observing

observing always to cleanse the brush from the filth it gathers from the bottom of the hair, by rubbing it on the curry-comb; then dust the horse again the second time.

Then having wetted your hand in water, rub his body all over, and, as near as you can, leave no loose hairs behind, and with your hands, wet, pick, and cleanse his eyes, ears, and nostrils, sheath, cods, and tuel, and so rub him till he is as dry as at first.

Then take an hair patch, and rub his body all over, but especially his fore-bowels under his belly, his flank, and between his hinder thighs; and in the last place, wipe him over with a fine white linen rubber.

When you have thus dressed him, take a large saddle cloth (made on purpose) that may reach down to the spurring-place, and lap it about his body; then clap on his saddle, and throw a cloth over him, that he may not catch cold.

Then twist two ropes of straw very hard together, and with them rub and chafe his legs from the knees and cambrels downwards to the ground, picking his fetlock joints, with your hands, from dust, filth, and scabs; then take another hair patch kept on purpose for his legs, (for you must have two) and with it rub and dress his legs also.

And while you are dressing your horse, let him not stand naked, so that his body be exposed to the penetration of the air; but when he is stripped, do your business roundly, without any intermission, till you have saddled him, and thrown his cloth over him.

When you have done this, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, comb down his mane and tail with a wet mane-comb, then spurt some beer in his mouth, and so draw him out of the stable.

The

Then mount him, rake or walk him either to some running river or fresh spring a mile or two distant from the stable, and there let him drink about half his draught at first, to prevent raw crudities arising in his stomach.

After he has drank, bring him calmly out of the water, and ride him gently for a while; for nothing is more unbecoming a horseman than to put his horse upon a swift gallop as soon as he comes out of the water, for these three reasons.

1. He does not only hazard the breaking of his wind, but assuredly hazards the incording or busting him.

2. It begets in him an ill habit of running away as soon as he has done drinking.

3. The foresight he has of such violent exercise makes him oftentimes refuse to quench his thirst, and therefore walk him a little way, and then put him into a gentle gallop for five or six score paces, and give him wind; and after he has been raked a pretty while, shew him the water again, and let him drink as much as he will, and then gallop him again, and repeat this till he will drink no more; but be sure to observe always, that you gallop him not so much as to chafe or sweat him.

Here take notice, that in his galloping after water, (after the first week's enfeaming) if sometimes you give him a watering course sharply of twelve or twenty score paces, according as you find your horse, it will quench his spirit, and cause him to gallop more pleasantly, and teach him to manage his limbs more nimbly, and stretch forth his body largely.

When your horse has done drinking, then rake him to the top of an hill, (if there be one near the watering-place) for there, in a morning, the air is purest; or else to some such place, where he may gain

gain the most advantage both by sun and air, and there air him foot-pace for an hour, or longer, as you in your judgment shall think fit, for the state of his body, and then ride him home.

During the time of your horse's airing, you may easily perceive several tokens of his satisfaction, and the pleasure that he takes in his exercise.

For he will gape, yawn, and as it were shrug his body.

If he offers to stand still to dung or stale, which his airing will provoke, be sure give him leave; as also to stare about, neigh, or listen to any noise.

These airings are advantageous to the horse on several accounts.

1. It purifies the blood (if the air be clear and pure;) it purges the body of many gross and suffocating humours, and so hardens and enscams the horse's fat, that it is not near so liable to be dissolved by ordinary exercise.

2. It teaches him how to let his wind rake, and equally keep time with the other actions and motions of his body.

3. It is of great advantage, both to hunters and gallopers, which are apt to lose their stomachs thro' excess or want of exercise, for the sharpness of the air will drive the horse's natural heat from the outward parts to the inward, which heat by furthering concoction creates appetite, and provokes the stomach.

4. It creates lust and courage in the horse, provided he be not aired too early.

When you are returned from airing, and are dismounted, lead the horse on the straw, which should always lie before the stable door, and there whistling and stirring up the litter under his belly, you will provoke him to stale, which he will be brought to do with a little practice, and it will be advantageous

ous to the health of the horse, and a means of keeping the stable cleaner: then lead him into his stall, (having first been well littered;) then tie up his head to the empty rack, take off the saddle, rub his body and legs all over with the *fresh butter*, then with the *hair patch*, and last of all with the *woolen-cloth*.

Then cloth him with a linnen cloth next to his body, and over that a canvas-cloth, and both made fit for him, to cover his breast, and to come pretty low down to his legs.

Then put over the before-mentioned a body-cloth of six or eight straps, which is better than a surcingle and pad stuff with whisps, because this keeps his belly in shape, and is not so subject to hurt him.

Now these cloths will be sufficient for him at his first stabling, because being inured to the cold, he will not be so apt to take cold, the weather being indifferently warm; but when sharp weather comes on, and you find his hair rise about those parts that are unclothed, as neck, gaskins, &c. then add another cloth, which ought to be of woollen, and for any horse bred under the climate, and kept only for ordinary hunting, this cloth will be sufficient.

Having already given directions as to the clothing of the horse, I shall only add this one general rule; that a rough coat is a token of want of cloaths, and a smooth coat of clothing sufficient, therefore, if notwithstanding what cloaths you have given him, his coat still stares, you must add more cloaths till it lie.

But if when he has been in keeping some time, you perceive him apt to sweat in the night, it is a sign he is over-fed, and wants exercise; but if he sweat at his first coming from grass, then there is reason to add rather than diminish his cloaths before directed for him at his housing; for it proceeds from the foul humours

humours that oppress nature, and when they are evacuated by exercise, nature will cease working, and he will continue in a temperate state of body all the year after.

When you have cloathed him up, pick his feet clean with an iron picker, and wash his hoofs clean with a sponge dipped in clean water, and dry them with straw or a linen cloth, then leave him on his snaffle for an hour or more, which will assist his appetite.

Then visit him again, dust a handful of hay, and let the horse teaze it out of your hand, till he hath eaten it; then pull off his bridle, and rub his head and neck clean with your hempen-cloth; pull his ears and stop his nostrils, to cause him to snort, which will bring away the moist humours which oppress his brain, and then put on his collar, and give him a quartern of oats clean dressed in a sieve, having first cleaned his locker or manger with a whisp of straw and a cloth.

While he is eating his corn, sweep out your stable, and see that all things are neat about him; then turn up his cloaths, and rub his fillets, buttocks, and gascoins over with the hair-patch, and after that with a woollen cloth; then spread a clean flannel fillet-cloth over his fillets, and buttocks, which will make his coat lie smooth, and turn down his housing-cloths upon it; then anoint his hoofs round from the cornet to the toe with this ointment.

Take 4 ounces of *Venice turpentine*, 3 ounces of the best *rosin*, of *bees-wax* 2 ounces, 1 pound of *dog's grease*, and half a pint of *train oil*; melt all these ingredients together, except the *turpentine*; then take them off the fire, and put in the *turpentine*, stirring it till it be well incorporated; then pour it out into an earthen gallipot, and keep it for use, but do not cover it till it is cold.

After

After this, stop his feet with cow-dung. If by this time your horse has eaten his oats with a good stomach, sift him another quartern, and so feed him with little and little, while he eats with an appetite; but if you find he fumbles with his corn, give him no more for that time, but always give him his full feeding, for that will keep his body in better state and temper, and increase his strength and vigour.

Whereas, on the contrary, to keep your horse always sharp-set, is the ready way to procure a surfeit, if at any time he can come at his fill of provender.

But though you should perceive that he gathers flesh too fast upon such home feeding, yet be sure not to stint him for it, but only increase his labour, and that will assist both his strength and wind.

Having done all the things before directed, dust a pretty quantity of hay, and throw it down to him on his litter, after you have taken it up under him; and then shutting up the windows and stable door, leave him till one o'clock in the afternoon; then visit him again, and rub over his head, neck, fillets, buttocks, and legs as before, with the hair patch and woollen cloth, and then leave him to the time of the evening watering, which should be about four o'clock in the summer, and three in the winter; when having put back his foul litter, and swept away that and his dung, dress and saddle him, as before, mount him and take him to the water, and when he has drank, gallop him, and air him till you think it time to go home; where you are to order in all points, as to rubbing, feeding, stopping his feet, &c. as you did in the morning, and having fed him about six o'clock, do not fail to feed him again at nine, litter him well, and give him hay enough to serve him all night; and so leave him till next morning.

After

After the directions for this one day, so must you order him for a fortnight, and by that time his flesh will be so hardened, and his wind so improved; his mouth will be so quickened, and his gallop brought to so good a stroke, that he will be fit to be put to moderate hunting.

Now during this fortnight's keeping, you are to make several observations, as to the nature and disposition of your horse, the temper of his body, the course of his digestion, &c. and order him accordingly.

1. Whether he be of a churlish disposition; if so, you must reclaim him by severity.

If of a gentle, familiar, and loving temper, you must engage and win him by kindness.

2. You must observe, whether he be a foul feeder, or of a nice-stomach; if he be quick at his meat, and retain a good stomach, then four times of full feeding in a night and a day are sufficient; but if he be a slender feeder and slow at his meat, then you must give him but a little at a time, and often, as about every two hours, for fresh meat will draw on his appetite; and you must always leave a little meat in his locker, for him to eat at leisure betwixt his feeding times; and if at any time you find any left, sweep it away and give him fresh, and expose that to the sun and air, which will reduce it again to its first sweetness as before it was blown upon.

His stomach may also be sharpened by change of meat, as by giving one meal clean oats, and at another oats and split beans, and when you have brought him to eat bread, you may give him another meal of bread, always observing to give him oftenest that which you find he likes best, or you may give him both corn and bread at the same time, provided you give him that last which he eats best, and which is of the best digestion.

It has been observed of some horses, that they are of so hot a constitution, that they cannot eat without drinking at every bit; and those horses usually carry no belly. You must let a pail of water stand continually before such horses, or at least give them water at noon, besides what they have abroad at their ordinary times.

In the next place, you are to observe the nature of his digestion, whether he retains his food long, which is a sign of bad digestion; or whether he dungs frequently, which if he does, and his dung be loose and bright, it is a sign of a good habit of body; but if it be seldom and hard, it is a sign of a dry constitution: in order to remedy which, give him once a day a handful or two of oats, well washed in good strong ale, and this will loosen his body and keep him moist; and it will also be good for his wind.

The second fortnight's diet for a HUNTING HORSE.

The horse having been ordered for the first fortnight according to the foregoing rules, will be in a pretty good state of body, for the gross humours in him will be dried up, and his flesh will begin to be hardened, which you may perceive by feeling his *chaul*, his *short ribs* and *flank*; for the kernels under his chaps will not feel so gross as they did at first, nor will his flesh on his short ribs feel so soft and loose, nor the thin part of his flank so thick as at first housing, so that you may now, without hazard, venture to hunt him moderately.

The time being now come that he may be hunted, he is to be ordered on his days of rest, in all points, as to his dressing, hours of feeding, watering, &c. as in the first fortnight before directed; but only since his labour is now increased, you must endeavour to increase his strength and courage likewise.

Take

Take two pecks of clean old beans, and one peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, and sift the meal through a meal sieve of an indifferent fineness, and knead it with warm water and a good store of yeast; then let it lie an hour, or more, to swell, which will make the bread the lighter, and have the easier and quicker digestion; and after it has been well kneaded, make it up in loaves of a peck a piece, which will prevent there being too much crust, and prevent it's drying too soon; let them be well baked, and stand a good while in the oven to soak: when they are drawn, turn the bottoms upwards, and let them stand to dry.

When the bread is a day old, chip away the crust, and you may give the horse some, giving him sometimes bread, sometimes oats, and sometimes oats and split beans, according as you find his stomach: and this feeding will bring him into as good condition as you need to desire for ordinary hunting.

The first fortnight being expired, and the bread prepared, you ought then to pitch upon a day for his going abroad after the dogs, and the day before you hunt, he must always be ordered after this manner.

In the morning proceed in your usual method as before, only observe that day to give him no beans, because they are hard of digestion, but give him most of bread if you can draw him to eat it, because it is more nourishing than oats; and after the evening, which ought to be somewhat earlier than at other times, give him only a little hay out of your hand, and no more till the next day that he returns from hunting; and to prevent his eating his litter, or any thing else but what you give him, instead of a muzzle put on a cavesson, joined to a head-stall of a bridle lined with leather, for fear of hurting him, and tying it so tight as to hinder his eating; and this will

will prevent sickness in your horse, which some horses are incident to when their muzzle is put on, notwithstanding the invention of the lattice window so much used; but by taking this method, the horse's nostrils are at full liberty, and he will not grow sick.

But as to corn, give him his meals, both after his watering, and at nine o'clock, and at that time be sure to litter him well, that he may take his rest the better that night, and then leave him till morning.

The next morning visit him early, at about four o'clock, and put a quarter of a peck of clean dressed oats into his locker, pouring into it a quart of good strong ale, mixing the oats and ale well together; then put back his dung and foul litter, and clean the stable; but if he will not eat washed oats, give him dry, but be sure not to put any beans in them.

When he has done eating, bridle him, and tie him up to the ring and dress him; having dressed him, saddle him, and throw his cloth over him, and let him stand till the hounds are ready to go out.

Take care not to draw the saddle girths too straight till you are ready to mount, lest that should cause him to grow sick.

Tho' old horses are generally so crafty, that when a groom goes to girt him up hard, they will extend their bodies so much by holding their wind (on purpose to gain ease after they are girt) that it will seem difficult to girt them, but when they let go their wind their bodies fall again.

When the hounds are unkennelled, (which should not be before sun-rising) go into the field along with them, and rake your horse up and down gently till a hare is started; always remembering to let him smell to the dung of other horses, if there be any, which will provoke him to empty himself; and suffer him

him to stand still till he does so; and if there be any dead *frogs*, *rushes*, or the like, ride him upon them, and whistle to him, to provoke him to stale and empty his bladder.

The *hare* being started, follow the hounds as the other hunters do; but remembering it to be the first time of his hunting, he is not so well acquainted with the different sorts of grounds, as to know how to gallop smoothly and with ease on them, and for that reason you ought not yet to put him to above half his speed, that he may learn to carry a stay'd body, and to manage his legs both upon fallows and green swarth.

Neither should you gallop him often, or any long time together, for fear of discouraging him, and causing a dislike of his exercise in him: and take care to cross fields to the best advantage; you should make into the hounds at every default, and still keep your horse, (as much as these directions will allow you) within the cry of the dogs, that he may be used to their cry; and by so doing, in a very short time he will take such delight and pleasure in their music, that he will be eager to follow them.

And if it happens that the chace is led over any carpet-ground, or sandy highway, on which your horse may lay down his body smoothly, there you may gallop him for a quarter or half a mile, to teach him to lay out his body, to gather up his legs, to lengthen and shorten his stroke, and according to the different earth he gallops on, as if on *green swarth*, *meadow*, *moor*, *beath*, &c. then to stoop and run more on the shoulders; if amongst *mole-hills*, or over *high ridges* and *furrows*, then to gallop more roundly or in less compass, or according to the vulgar phrase, *two up and two down*, that thereby he may strike his furrow clear, and avoid setting his fore-feet in the bottom of it, and by that means fall over; but, by the way,

way, galloping, tho' he should happen to set his feet in a furrow, yet carrying his body so round, and resting on the hand in his gallop, would prevent his falling; and to his perfection, nothing but use, and such moderate exercise, can bring him.

According to these directions, you may hunt till about three o'clock in the afternoon, at which time ride him home in a foot-pace, as you came out in the morning; and be sure that you let him walk out of the field; and as you are going home, consider whether he hath sweat a little, (for you must not sweat him much the first time) but if not, then gallop him gently on some skelping earth, till he sweat at the roots of his ears, a little on his neck, and in his flank; but it must be done of his own voluntary motion, without the compulsion of whip or spur: and then when he is cool as aforesaid, have him home and stable him, and by no means walk him in hand to cool him, for fear of his cooling too fast, nor do not wash him, for fear of causing an obstruction of the natural course of the humours, and by that means cause an inflammation in his legs, which is the original cause of the scratches.

His stall being well littered against he comes home, set him up, tying his head to the ring with the bridle, and then rub him well down with dry straw all over his head, neck, fore bowels, belly, flank, buttocks, and legs, and after that rub his body over with a dry cloth, till he has not a wet hair left about him; the place where the saddle was, dry, in like manner, and cloath him immediately with his ordinary cloaths lest he take cold; and if you suppose him to be very hot, throw a spare cloth over him, that he may not cool too fast, which you may abate when you please, and so let him stand on his snaffle, two hours or better, now and then stirring him in his stall

stall with your whip, to prevent him from growing stiff in the legs and joints.

When that time is expired, and you think he is thoroughly cold, draw his bridle, rub his head, pick his feet from dirt or gravel, and put on his collar, and give him a quart or three pints of sifted oats, mixed with a handful of clean dressed hemp seed; but give him not more than the quantity prescribed, for fear of taking away his stomach, which will be very much weakened through the heat of his body, and want of water.

Then take off the spare cloth, (if it has not been done before) for fear of keeping him hot too long; and when he has eaten his corn, throw a pretty quantity of hay, clean dusted, on his litter, and let him rest two or three hours, or thereabouts.

Then having prepared him a good mash, made of half a peck of malt, well ground, and boiling hot water, so much as the malt will sweeten and the horse will drink, stir them well together, and cover it over with a cloth, till the water has extracted the strength of the malt, which will be almost as sweet as honey, and feel ropy like bird-lime; being but little more than blood-warm, give it the horse; but not before, lest the steam go up his nostrils and offend him; and when he has drank up the water, let him, if he pleases, eat the malt-too.

But if he refuse to drink it, you must not give him any other water that night, but place this drink in some place of his stall, so that he may not throw it down, and let it stand by him all night, that he may drink it when he pleases.

This mash, or as it is called, *horse-caudle*, will comfort his stomach, and keep his body in a due temperate heat after his day's hunting; it will cleanse and bring away all manner of grease and gross humours, which have been dissolved by the day's labour;

bou; and the fume of the malt grains, after he has drank the water, will disperse the watery humours which might otherwise annoy his head, and is allowed by all skilled in horses, to be very advantageous on that account.

After he has eaten his mash, strip him of his cloaths, and run him over with a *curry comb*, *French brush*, *hair patch*, *woollen* and *cloth*, and cloath him up again, and cleanse his legs as well as his body, of all dirt and filth which may annoy them, and then remove him into another stall (that you may not wet his litter) and bathe his legs all over from the knees with warm *beef-broth*, or (which is better) with a quart of warm *urine*, in which four ounces of *salt-petre* has been dissolved; then rub his legs dry, set him again into his stall, and give him a good home feeding of oats, or bread, which he likes best, or both, and having shook good store of litter under him, that he may rest the better, and thrown him hay enough for all night, shut the stable door close, and leave him to his rest till the next morning.

About six or seven o'clock the next morning, go to him again, but don't disturb him, for the morning's rest is as refreshing to a horse as to a man; but when he rises of his own accord, go to him, put back his dung from his litter, and observe what colour it is of, whether it be greasy and shine outwardly, and also break it with your feet, to see if it be so inwardly; for if it be greasy and fowl (which you may know by its shining outwardly, and by the spots like soap that will appear within) or if it appear of a dark brown colour, and harder than it was, it is a token that the hunting of the day before has done him good, by dissolving part of the inward *glut* which was within him; and therefore the next time you hunt, you should increase his labour but a little.

But

But if you perceive no such symptoms, but that his dung appears bright, and rather *soft* than *hard*, without grease, and in a word, that it holds the same pale yellow colour that it did before he hunted, it is a sign that a day's hunting made no *dissolution*, but that his body remains in the same state still, and therefore the next day's hunting you may almost double his labour.

Having made these remarks on his *dung*, then you may proceed to order him as on his days of rest; that is to say, you shall give him a handful or two of *oats* before water, then dress, water, air, feed, &c. as in the first fortnight.

If you find him quick, and that he retains his bread but a little while, then only chip his bread lightly; but if it be slow and he retains it long, then cut away all the crust and give it to some other horse, and feed the hunting horse only with the *crumb*, for that being light of digestion, is so soon converted into chyle and excrements, but the *crust* being not so soon digested, requires, by reason of its hardness, longer time before it is concocted.

The next day after your horse has rested, you may hunt him again as you did the first day, observing from the remarks you have made, to hunt him more or less according as you find his temper and constitution; and when you come home, put in practice the rules just now given.

And thus you may hunt him three times a week for a fortnight together, but do not fail to give him his full feeding, and no other *scourings* but mashes and hemp-seed, which is equal in its virtue with the former, and only carries off superfluous humours in the dung.

The third fortnight's diet, &c. for a HUNTING-HORSE.

By this time the horse will be drawn so clean, his flesh will be so enfeamed, and his wind so improved, that he will be able to ride a chase of three or four miles without blowing or sweating; and you may find by his *chaul* and *flank*, as well as his *ribs*, that he is in an indifferent good state of body, and therefore in this next fortnight you must increase his labour, and by that means you will be able to make a judgment of what he will be able to do, and whether or no he will be ever fit for running for *plates*, or a *match*.

When your horse is set over night, and fed early in the morning, as has been directed for the second fortnight, then go into the field with him, and when he is empty, (as he will be by that time you have started your game) follow the dogs at a good round rate, as at half speed, and so continue till you have either killed or lost your first *hare*.

This will so rack your horse, and he will have so emptied himself, that he will be in a fit condition to be rid the next chase briskly, which as soon as it is begun, you may follow the dogs at three quarters speed, and as near as is fit for a good horseman, and skilful huntsman, but be sure to take care not to strain him.

During this day's riding, you ought to observe nicely, your horse's *sweat*, under his *saddle* and *fore-bowels*, and if it appear white, like froth or soap-suds, it is a sign of inward glut and foulness, and that your day's exercise was enough for him, therefore ride him home, and order him as before directed.

But if it has happened that your exercise has been so easy as not to sweat your horse thoroughly, then
you

you ought to make a train scent of four miles in length, or thereabouts, and laying on your fleetest dogs, ride it briskly and afterwards cool him in the field, and ride him home and order him as has been before directed.

A *train-scent*, is the training of a dead cat or fox, (and in case of necessity a red herring) three or four miles, according as the rider shall please, and then laying the dogs on the scent.

It will be proper to keep two or three couple of the fleetest hounds that can possibly be procured, for this purpose.

When you take off your horse's bridle, give him a good quantity of *rye-bread* instead of *hemp-seed* and *oats*, and for that purpose bake a peck loaf, for this being cold and moist, will be of use to cool his body after his labour, and prevent costiveness, to which you will find him addicted; then give him hay, and afterwards a mash, and order him in all things as before directed.

The next morning, if you perceive by his *dung* that his body is distempered, and that he is hard and bound, then take some crumbs of your rye-bread, and work it with as much sweet fresh butter as will make it into a paste, and make it up into balls about the bigness of a large walnut, of which give him five or six in a morning.

After this put the saddle on upon the cloth, get up and gallop him gently upon some grass plot or close that is near at hand, till he begins to sweat under his ears, and then carry him into the stable again, rub him well, and throw a spare cloth over him, and a good quantity of fresh litter under him, and let him stand two hours on the bridle; then give him a quantity of *rye-bread*, and some *hay* to chew upon, then procure him a warm mash, and feed him

with bread and corn, as much as he will eat, and also as much hay as he will eat.

The next day water him abroad, and order him as is before directed for days of rest.

The next day you may hunt him again, but not so hard as you did the time before, till the afternoon; but then ride him after the dogs briskly, and if that does not make him sweat thoroughly, make another *train-scent*, and follow the dogs three quarters speed that he may sweat heartily; then cool him a little, and ride him home, and as soon as he is come in the stable, give him two or three balls as big as walnuts, of the following excellent scouring:

Take of *butter*, eight ounces; *lenitive electuary*, four ounces; *gromwel*, *broom*, and *pursly-seeds*, of each two ounces; *anniseeds*, *liquorice*, and *cream of tartar*, of each one ounce; of *jalap*, two ounces; reduce the seeds to a powder, then stir them into a paste with the *electuary* and *butter*; knead it well together, put it into a pot, and keep it close stopped for use.

As soon as the horse has taken these balls, rub him dry, dress him, and cloath him warm, and let him stand two or three hours upon the snaffle, and afterwards give him two or three handfuls of rye-bread, and order him as you have been directed before, as to hay, provender, mash, &c. and so leave him till the morning.

In the morning take notice of his dung, whether it still retains the true colour, or be *dark*, *black*, or *red* and *high-coloured*: in the next place, whether it be loose and thin, or hard and dry.

If it be of a *pale yellow*, which is the right colour, it is a sign of health, strength, and cleanness; if it be *dark*, or *black*, then it is a sign there is *grease* and other ill humours stirred up, which are not yet evacuated; if it be *red* and *high-coloured*, then it is a sign that

that his blood is feverish and distempered, by means of inward heat: if it be loose and thin, it is a sign of weakness; but if hard and dry, it shews the horse to be hot inwardly, or else that he is a foul feeder: but if his dung be in a medium between hard and soft, and smell strong, it is a sign of health and vigour.

When these observations have been made on his dung, then *feed, dress, water, &c.* as on his usual days of rest, always letting him have variety, and his fill of *corn* and bread.

The next day have him abroad into the field again, but do not by any means put him to any labour more than taking him from hill to hill after the dogs, keeping him within sound of their cry; for the intent of this day's exercise is only to keep him in breath, and procure him an appetite.

In riding, let him stand still to dung, and look back on it, that you may be able to judge of his state thereby.

When the day is near spent, ride him home without the least sweat, and order him as at other times, except that you are not to give him any *scouring*, or *rye-bread*.

You may, if you please, this day, water your horse, both at going into the field and coming out, *galloping* him after it, to warm the water in his belly.

The next day being to be a day of rest, order him in the same manner in every respect as on other days of rest; and as you have spent this week, you must spend the next, without any alteration; and by this time, and this management, you may depend upon it that your horse has been drawn clean enough for ordinary hunting.

Having thus drawn your horse clean according to art, you will perceive those signs before mentioned

very plainly, for his flesh on his short ribs and buttocks will be as hard as *brawn*, his *flank* will be thin, and nothing to be felt but a double skin, and *chaps* so clean from *fat*, *glut* or *kernels*, that you may hide your fists in them; and above all, this exercise will give plain demonstration of the effectualness of this method of ordering him, for he will run three or four miles three quarters speed without sweating, or scarce so much as blowing.

When the horse has been brought to this state, you must use no more scouring after hunting, (because nature has nothing to work on) but rye-bread and mash, except the horse be now and then troubled with some little pose in his head; and then bruise a little mustard seed in a fine linen rag, and steep it in a quart of strong ale, for three or four hours, and then untying the rag, mix the mustard-seed and the ale with a quarter of a peck of oats, and give it to him.

In the last place, the horse having been thus drawn clean, you ought to take care not to let him grow foul again, through want of either airing or hunting, or any other negligence, lest by that means you make yourself a double trouble.

Of breeding HUNTING and RACE HORSES.

Procure either an *Arabian*, a *Spanish*, or *Turkish* horse, or a *Barb* for a *Stallion*, which is well shaped, and of a good colour, to beautify your race; and some advise that he be well marked too, tho' others are of opinion, that marks are not so significant as *Mr. Blundeville* and *Frederigo Griffone* would have us believe.

Those who have travelled into those parts report, that the right *Arabian* horses are valued at an almost incredible rate, at five hundred, and others say, two or three thousand pounds an horse; that the *Arabs* are

are as careful of keeping the genealogies of their horses, as princes are in keeping their pedigrees; that they keep them with medals; and that each son's portion is usually two suits of arms, two scymeters, and one of these horses. The *Arabs* boast, that they will ride eighty miles a day without drawing bitt; which is no more than has been performed by several of our *English* horses.

But much more was performed by a highwayman's horse, who having committed a robbery, rode on the same day from *London* to *York*, being two hundred miles.

Notwithstanding their great value, and the difficulty in bringing them from *Scanderoon* to *England* by sea, yet by the care and charge of some breeders in the north, the *Arabian* horse is no stranger to those parts, where probably may be seen at this day some of the race, if not a true *Arabian* stallion.

The *Spanish* horse (in the duke of *Newcastle's* opinion) is the noblest horse in the world, and the most beautiful that can be; no horse is so beautifully shaped all over from *head* to *croup*, and he is absolutely the best *stallion* in the world, either for breed, for the manege the war, the pad, hunting, or running horses; but as they are excellent, so is their price extravagant, three or four hundred pistoles being a common price for a *Spanish* horse.

Several have been sold for seven hundred, eight hundred, and a thousand pistoles a-piece.

The best *Spanish* horses are bred in *Andalusia*, and particularly at *Cordova*, where the king has many studs of mares, and so likewise have several of the *Spanish* nobility and gentry.

Now besides the great price they cost at first, the charges of the journey from *Spain* to *England* will be very considerable; for first they must travel from *Andalusia* to *Bilboa*, or *St. Sebastian*, the nearest ports

to *England*, and is at the least four hundred miles: and in that hot country, you cannot with safety travel your horse above twenty miles a day; and besides, you must be at the expence of a *Groom* and *Farrier*, besides the casualty of sickness, lameness and death: so that if he should happen to prove an extraordinary good horse, by the time you have got him home, he will also be an *extraordinary dear one*.

The *Turkish* horse is but little inferior to the *Spanish* in beauty, but somewhat odd shaped, his head being somewhat like that of a *camel*; he hath excellent eyes, a thin neck, excellent risen, and somewhat large of body; his *croup* is like that of a *Barb*, but very sinewy, good pasterns, and good hoofs: they never amble, but trot very well, and are at present accounted better stallions for galloppers than *Barbs*.

Some merchants tell us, that there cannot be a more noble and diverting sight to a lover of horses, than to walk into the pastures near *Constantinople*, about foiling time, where he may see many hundred gallant horses tethered, and every horse has his attendant or keeper, with his little tent placed near him to lie in, that he may look to him and take care to shift him to fresh grass.

The price of a *Turkish* horse is commonly one hundred or one hundred and fifty pounds; and when bought, it is difficult to get a pass, the Grand Signor being so very strict, that he seldom (but upon very extraordinary occasions) permits any of his horses to be exported.

But if you should attain a liberty so to do, and travel by land, unless you have a *Turk* or two for a convoy, you will be sure to have them seized on by the way.

And

And besides, you will find the same difficulties of a long journey, for you must come through *Germany*, which is a very long way, and the same charge attending it, that is, a Groom and Farrier, who must be careful that they intrust no person whatsoever with the care of him but themselves, especially in shoeing him, for it is the common practice beyond sea, as well as here, wherever they see a fine horse, to hire a farrier to prick him, that they may buy him for a stallion.

But some persons chuse to buy horses at *Smyrna* in *Antolia*, and from thence, and likewise from *Constantinople*, to transport them to *England* by sea, which if the wind serves right, arrive in *England* in a month; though generally the merchants voyages are not made in much less than two or three months.

The *Barb* is little inferior to any of the former in beauty; but our modern breeders account him too slender and *lady-like* to breed on, and therefore, in the north of *England*, they prefer the *Spanish* and *Turkish* horse before him.

He is so lazy and negligent in his walk, that he will stumble on carpet ground.

His trot is like that of a cow, his gallop low and with much ease to himself; but he is for the most part sinewy and nervous, excellently winded, and good for a *course*, if he be not over-weighed.

The mountain *Barbs* are esteemed the best, because they are strongest and largest: they belong to the *Al-larbes*, who value them themselves as much as other nations do, and therefore will not part with them to any persons except to the *Prince of the land* to which they belong, who can at any time at his pleasure command them for his own use; but for the other more ordinary sort, they are to be met with pretty common in the hands of our nobility and gentry; or if you send to *Languedoc*, or *Provence*, in *France*,
C 6 they

they may be bought there for forty or fifty pistoles a horse.

Or if you send to *Barbary*, you may buy one for thirty pounds, or thereabouts; but in this case too, the charges and journey will be great; for tho' it be no great voyage from *Tunis* to *Marseilles* in *France*, yet from *Marseilles* to *Calais*, by land, is the whole length of *France*, and from thence they are shipped for *England*.

The next thing to be considered is the choice of *mares*, and according to the duke of *Newcastle's* opinion, the fittest mare to breed out of, is one that has been bred of an *English* mare by *fire* and *dam*, that is well *fore-handed*, well *underlaid*, and strong put together in general; and in particular, see that she have a *lean head*, wide nostrils, open *chaul*, a big *weasand*, and the *wind pipe* strait and loose; and of about five or six years old; and be sure that the stallion be not too old.

As for the food of the STALLION;

Keep him as high as possible you can, for the first four or five months before the time of *covering*, with old clean *oats* and *split beans*, well hull'd, and if you please you may add bread to them, such as you will be hereafter directed to make; and now and then a handful of clean wheat may be given him, or oats washed in strong ale, for variety.

Be sure to let him have plenty of good *old sweet hay*, well cleansed from dust, and good wheat straw to lie on; water him twice a day, at some fair running stream, or else in a clear standing pond water, if you cannot have the first; and gallop him after he hath drank, in some meadow or level piece of ground.

Do not suffer him to drink his fill at his first coming to the water, but after his first draught, gallop and
scope

scope him up and down to warm him, and then bring him to the water again and let him drink his fill, gallop him again as before, never leaving the water till he hath drank as much as he will.

By this means you will prevent raw crudities, which the coldness of the water would otherwise produce, to the detriment of his stomach, if you had permitted him to drink his fill at first, whereas by allowing him his fill (tho' by degrees) at last, you keep his body from drying too fast.

As for other rules for the ordering him after watering, and the hours of feeding, &c. they will be more proper.

When the stallion is in lust, and the time of covering is come, which is best to be in *May*, that the foals may fall in the *April* following, otherwise they will have little or no grafs.

Then pull off his hinder shoes, and lead him to the place where the stud of mares are which you intend for covering; which place ought to be a close, well fenced, and in a little hut for a man to lie in, and a large shed with a manger, to feed your stallion with bread and corn during his abode with the mares, and shelter for him in the heat of the day, and in rainy weather: and this close ought to be of sufficient largeness to keep the mares well for two months.

Before you pull off his bridle, let him cover a mare or two in hand, then turn him loose among them, and put all your mares to him, as well those that are with foal, as those which are not, for there is no danger in it; and by that means they will all be served in the height of their lust, and according to the intention of nature.

When your stallion has covered them once, he will try them all over again, and those that will admit him, he will serve; and when he hath done his business, he will beat against the pales, and attempt
to

to be at liberty, which when your man finds, (who is to observe them night and day, and to take care that no other mares are put to your horse, and to give you an account which take the horse, and which not, &c.) then take him up, and keep him well as you did before, first giving him a mash or two, to help to restore nature; for you will find him little but skin and bones, and his *mane* and *tail* will rot off.

Be sure never to give him above ten or twelve mares in a season at most, otherwise you will scarce recover him against the next covering time.

Some advise to *covering in hand*, as the other is called *covering out of hand*, and is as follows: When you have brought both your horse and your mare to a proper condition for breeding, by art and good feeding, then set some ordinary stone nag by her for a day or two, to woo her, and that will make her so prone to lust, that she will readily receive your stallion, which you should present to her, either early in the morning, or late in the evening, for a day or two together, and let him cover in hand once or twice, if you please, at each time observing to give the horse the advantage of ground, and have a person ready with a bucket of cold water to throw on the mare's shape immediately upon the dismounting of the horse, which will make her retain the seed she received the better; especially if you get on her back, and trot her up and down for a quarter of an hour, but take care of heating or straining her: and it will not be amiss if you let them fast two hours after such act, and then give each of them a warm mash, and it is odds but this way your mares may be as well served as the other, and your stallion will last you much longer.

If

If you take care to house the mares all the winter, and keep them well, their colts will prove the better.

Of riding a HUNTING-MATCH or HEATS for a PLATE.

The first thing requisite is a *rider*, who ought to be a faithful one, in whom you may confide; and he should have a good close seat, his knees being held firm to his saddle skirts, his toes being turned inwards, and his spurs outwards from the horse's sides, his left hand governing the horse's mouth, and his right commanding the whip, taking care, during the whole time of his trial, to sit firm in the saddle, without wavering, or standing up in the stirrups, which actions do very much incommode a horse, notwithstanding the conceited opinion of some jockies, that it is a becoming seat.

In spurring his horse, he should not strike him hard with the calves of his legs, as if he would beat the wind out of his body, but just turning his toes outwards, and bringing his spurs quick to his sides; and such a sharp stroke will be of more service towards the quickening of the horse, and sooner draw blood.

Let him be sure never to spur him but when there is occasion, and avoid spurring him under the fore-bowels, between his shoulder and girths, near the heart, (which is the tenderest place of a horse) till the last extremity.

As to the whipping the horse, it ought to be over the shoulder on the near side, except upon hard running, and when you are at all, then strike the horse in the flank with a strong jerk, the skin being tenderest there, and most sensible of the lash.

He must observe, when he whips and spurs his horse, and is certain that he is at the top of his speed,
if

if then he claps his ears in his pole, or whisks his tail, then he may be sure that he bears him hard; and then he ought to give him as much comfort as he can, by *sawing* his snaffle to and fro in his mouth, and by this means forcing him to open his mouth, which will comfort him and give him wind.

If in the time of riding there is any high wind stirring, if it be in his face, he should let the adversary lead, he holding hard behind him till he sees an opportunity of giving a loose; yet he must take care to keep so close to him that his adversary's horse may break the wind from his, and that he, by stooping low in his seat, may shelter himself under him, which will assist the strength of his horse.

But on the contrary, if the wind be at his back, he must ride exactly behind him, that his own horse may alone enjoy the benefit of the wind, by being as it were blown forward, and by breaking it from his adversary as much as possible.

In the next place, observe what ground your horse delights most to run on, and bear the horse (as much as your adversary will give you leave) on level carpet ground, because the horse will naturally be desirous to spend him more freely thereon; but on deep earths give him more liberty, because he will naturally favour himself thereupon.

If you are to run up hill, don't forget by any means to favour your horse, and bear him, for fear of running him out of wind, but if it be down hill (if your horse's feet and shoulders will endure it, and you dare venture your neck) always give him a loose.

This may be observed as a general rule, that if you find your horse to have the heels of the other, that then you be careful to preserve his speed till the last train scent, if you are not to run a strait course; but if so, then till the end of the course, and so to
husband

husband it then also, that you may be able to make a push for it at the last post.

In the next place, you are to acquaint yourself, as well as you can, of the nature and temper of your adversary's horse, and if he be fiery, then to run just behind, or just cheek by jowl, and with the whip make as much noise as you can, that you may force him on faster than his rider would have him, and by that means spend him the sooner; or else keep just before him, on such a slow gallop, that he may either overreach, or by treading on your horse's heels (if he will not take the leading) endanger falling over.

Take notice also on what ground your opponent's horse runs the worst, and be sure to give a loose on that earth, that he being forced to follow you, may be in danger of stumbling, or clapping on the back sinews.

In this like manner, in your riding observe the several *helps* and *corrections* of the *hand*, the *whip*, and *spur*, and when, and how often he makes use of them; and when you perceive that his horse begins to be *blown*, by any of the former symptoms, as clapping down his ears, whisking his tail, holding out his nose like a pig, &c. you may then take it for granted that he is at the height of what he can do; and therefore, in this case, take notice how your own rides, and if he runs chearfully and strongly, without spurring, then be sure to keep your adversary to the same speed, without giving him ease, and, by so doing, you will quickly bring him to give out, or else distance him.

Observe at the end of every *train scent* what condition the other horse is in, and how he holds out in his labour, of which you may be able to make a judgment by his looks, the working of his flank, and the slackness of his girths.

For

For if he looks dull, it is a sign that his spirits fail him; if his flanks beat much, it is a token that his wind begins to fail him, and consequently his strength will do so too.

If his wind fail him, then his body will grow thin, and appear tucked up, which will make his girths, to the eye, seem to be slack; and therefore you may take this for a rule, that a horse's wanting girthing, after the first scent, provided he were girt close at his first starting, is a good sign; and if you find it so, you need not much despair of winning the wager.

After the end of every *train-scent*, and also after every heat for a plate, you must have dry straw and dry cloths, both linen and woollen, which have been steeped in *urine* and *salt-petre* a day or two, and then dried in the sun, and also one or two of each must be brought into the field wet; and after the train has been ended, two or three persons must help you; and after the groom has, with a knife of heat, scraped off all the sweat from the horse's neck, body, &c. then they must rub him well down dry, all over, first with the dry straw, and then with dry cloths, whilst others are busy about his legs; and as soon as they have rubbed him dry, then let them chafe them with the wet cloths, and never give over till you are called by the judges to start again.

The next thing to be regarded, are the judges or triers office, who are to see that all things are ordered according to the articles agreed on, which to that end ought to be read before the horses start.

Next, that each trier on whose side the train is to be led, according as the articles give directions for its leading, according to the advice of the *rider*, or his knowledge of the nature and disposition of that horse on whose side he is chose.

Next, that each trier be so advantageously mounted, as to ride up behind the horses (but not upon them)

them) all day, and to observe that the contrary horse ride his true ground, and observe the articles in every particular, or else not to permit him to proceed.

Next, that after each *train-scent* be ended, each *trier* look to that horse against which he is chosen, and observe that he be no way relieved but with rubbing, except liberty on both sides be given to the contrary.

Next, as soon as the time allowed for rubbing be expired, which is generally half an hour, they shall command them to mount, and if either *rider* refuse, it may be lawful for the other to start without him; and having beat him the distance agreed on, the wager is to be adjudged on his side.

Next, the *triers* shall keep off all other horses from crossing the *riders*; only they themselves may be allowed to instruct the *riders* by word of mouth, how to ride, whether slow or fast, according to the advantages he perceives may be gained by his directions.

Lastly, if there be any weight agreed on, they shall see that both horses bring their true weight to the starting-place, and carry it to the end of the train, upon the penalty of losing the wager.

Now in running for a *plate* there are not so many observations to be made, nor more directions required, than what have been already given, only this; if you know your horse to be tough at bottom, and that he will stick at mark, to ride him each heat, according to the best of his performance, and avoid as much as possible either riding at any particular horse, or staying for any, but to ride each heat throughout with the best speed you can.

But if you have a very fiery horse to manage, or one that is hard-mouthed and difficult to be held, then start him behind the rest of the horses, with
all

all the coolness and gentleness imaginable ; and when you find that he begins to ride at some command, then put up to the other horses, and if you find they ride at their ease, and are hard held, then endeavour to draw them on faster : but if you find their wind begin to rake hot, and that they want a sob, if your horse be in wind, and you have a loose in your hand, keep them up to their speed till you come within three quarters of a mile of the end of the heat, and then give a loose and push for it, and leave to fortune and the goodness of your horse the event of your success.

Lastly, when either your *hunting-match* or the *trial* for the *plate* is ended, as soon as you have rubbed your horse dry, cloth him up and ride him home, and the first thing give him the following drink to comfort him.

Beat the yolks of three eggs, and put them into a pint and a half of sweet milk, then warm it lukewarm, and put to it three pennyworth of saffron, and three spoonfuls of fallad oil, and give it him in a horn.

Having done this, dress him slightly over with the curry-comb, brush, and woollen-cloth, and then bathe the place where the saddle stood with warm sack, to prevent warbles ; and wash the spurring places with piss and salt, and afterwards anoint them with turpentine and powder of *jett*, mixed together ; then litter the stable very well, clothing him up as quick as possible, and let him stand for two hours.

Then feed him with *rye-bread*, after that with a good mash, and give him his belly full of hay, and what corn and bread he will eat.

Then bathe his legs well with urine and salt-petre, leave him corn in his locker, and so let him rest till the next morning, at which time order him as before directed in his days of rest.

How

How to order a horse for a match or plate.

When you have matched your horse, or design to put him in for a plate, you should consider that you ought to reserve a month at least, to draw his body perfectly clean, and to refine his wind to that degree of perfection that is capable of being attained by art.

In the first place, take an exact view of the state of his body, both outwardly and inwardly, as whether he be *low* or *high* in flesh, or whether he be dull and heavy when abroad, and if this has been caused by too hard riding, or by means of some grease that has been dissolved by hunting, and has not been removed by scouring.

If he appear *sluggish* and *melancholy* from either of these causes, then give him half an ounce of *diapente* in a pint of good old *Malaga* sack, which will both cleanse his body and revive his spirits.

Then for the first week feed him continually with *bread*, *oats* and *split beans*, giving him sometimes the one and sometimes the other, according to what he likes best, always leaving him some in his locker for him to eat at leisure when you are absent: and when you return at your hours of feeding, take away what is left and give him fresh, till you have made him wanton and playful.

To this purpose, take notice, that tho' you ride him every day morning and evening, on airing, and every other day on hunting, yet you are not to sweat him, or put him to any violent labour, the design of this week's ordering being to keep him in wind and breath, and to prevent *pursiveness*.

But take notice of this, that your *oats*, *beans*, and *bread*, are now to be ordered after another manner than what they were before; for first, the oats must be well dried in the sun, and then put into a clean bag

bag and soundly beat with a flail or cudgel, till you think they are hulled, then take them out of the bag and winnow them clean, both from hulls and dust, and give them to your horse as there is occasion.

After the same manner must you order your beans, separating them from the hulls, which are apt to breed the *glut*, and must either be thrown away, or given among chaff to some more ordinary horse.

And as for the *bread*, which was only chipt before, now the crust must be cut clean off, and be otherwise disposed of, it being hard of digestion, and will be apt to heat and dry the horse's body; and besides, you must make a finer bread than before, as follows:

Take two pecks of beans, and a peck of wheat, and let them be ground together, but not too fine, to prevent too much bran being in the bread; and dress one peck of the meal through a fine range, and knead it up with new ale yeast, and the whites of a dozen new laid eggs, and bake this in a loaf by itself; but dress the rest of the meal through a boulder, and knead it only with ale and yeast, and use it in all other points as the former: the peck loaf is to be given the horse when you set him, and the other at ordinary times.

Having treated of the condition of those horses which are melancholy and low of flesh, I shall now speak of those which are brisk and lively: if your horse be so, that when you lead him out of the stable he will leap and play about you, then you must not only omit giving him the scouring of sack and *diapente*, but any other whatsoever, for there being no foul humours, nor superfluous matter left in his body, for the physic to work upon, it will prey upon the strength of his body, and by that means weaken it.

If your horse be engaged in a hunting match, you must sweat him twice this week, but not by hunting him

him after the *hare*, but by *train-scents*, since the former on this occasion may prove deceitful ; for though the hounds should be very swift, yet the scent being cold, the dogs will very often be at a fault, and by that means the horse will have many fobs : so that when he comes to run train-scents in earnest, he will expect ease for his wind.

Therefore lead your train-scents with a dead cat, over such grounds as you are likely to run on, and best agrees with the humour of your horse, and also chuse the fleetest hounds you can get, and they will keep your horse up to the height of his speed.

As to the number of *train-scents* that you should ride at a time, that is to be ordered according to the match you are to run, or rather according to the strength of your horse, and ability for performing his heats ; for if you labour him beyond his strength, it will take him off his speed, weaken his limbs, and daunt his spirit.

If you give him too little exercise it will render him liable to be purfivè, and full of ill humours, as glut, &c. and incline him to a habit of laziness, so that when he comes to be put to labour beyond his usual rate, he will grow restive and settle, like a jade.

But so far may be said by way of direction, that if you are to run eight *train-scents*, and the strait-course, more or less, you are to put him to such severe labour, not above twice in the whole month's keeping.

And if it be in the first fortnight, it will be the better, for then he will have a whole fortnight to recover his strength in again ; and as for his labour in his last fortnight, let it be proportionate to his strength and wind, as sometimes half his task, and then three quarters of it.

Only

Only observe, that the last trial you make in the first fortnight, be a train-scent more than your match, for by that means you will find what he is able to do.

If you design your horse for a *plate*, let him take his heats according to this direction, only let him be on the place, that he may be acquainted with the ground; and as for the hounds, you may omit them, as not being tied to their speed, but that of your adversary's horse.

But as to the number of heats, let them be according to what the articles exact; only observe, that as to the sharpness of them, they must be regulated according to his strength, and the goodness of his wind.

And when you heat him, provide some horses upon the course to run against him; this will quicken his spirits and encourage him, when he finds he can command them at his pleasure.

And here you must observe the same rule, not to give the horse a bloody heat for ten days or a fortnight, before the plate be to run for; and let the last heat you give him before the day of trial be in all his cloths, and just skelp it over, which will make him run the next time the more vigorously, when he shall be stript naked and feel the cold air pierce him.

During this month, and on his resting days, and after his sweats on heating days, (if there be any occasion for sweating him) you must observe the same rules which have been given for the first week of the third fortnight's keeping, only you must omit all scourings but rye-bread and mashes, since your horse being in so perfect a state of body, has no need of any, except you shall judge there is occasion, and that the horse proves thirsty, about eight or nine o'clock

o'clock at night you may give him the following julep, to cool and quench his thirst.

Take two quarts of *barley-water*, three ounces of syrup of *violets*, two ounces of syrup of *lemons*, and having mixed them together, give them the horse to drink, and if he refuse, place it so that he may not throw it down, and let it stand by him all night.

During the last fortnight you must give him dried oats that have been hulled by heating, and having washed half a strike of oats in the whites of a dozen or twenty eggs, stir them together, and let them lie all night to soak, and spread them abroad in the sun the next morning, till they are as dry as they were at first, and so give them to your horse, and when these are spent, prepare another quantity after the same manner.

But if you find your horse inclinable to be costive, then give him oats washed in two or three whites of eggs and ale beaten up together, to cool his body and keep it moist.

Give him not any mash for the last week, only the *barley-water* before directed, but let him have his fill of hay, till a day before he is to ride the *match*, when you must give it him more sparingly, that he may have time to digest that he has eaten, and then, and not before, you may muzzle him with your cavesson; and be sure that day, and not till the morning, he is led out, to feed him as much as possible, for such a day's labour will require something to maintain his strength.

Therefore in the morning before you are to lead him out, give him a toast or two of white bread steeped in sack, which will invigorate him; and when you have done, lead him out into the field.

But if you are to run for a *plate*, which commonly is not till three o'clock in the afternoon, then by all means have him out early in the morning air,

that he may empty his body, and when he is come in from airing, feed him with toasts in sack; considering that as too much fulness will endanger his wind, so too long fasting will cause faintness.

When he has eaten what you thought fit to give him, put on his cavesson, and having afterwards soundly chafed his legs with piece-grease and brandy warmed together, or train-oil (which likewise ought to be used daily at noon, for a week before the *match*, or longer, if you see cause) shake up his litter and shut the stable up close, and take care that there is no noise made near him, and let him rest till the hour comes that he is to go out into the field.

Of M A R E S.

A *Mare* may be covered when she is passed two years old, though the best time is after four years old, when she will nourish her colt best; and though she may breed till thirteen, yet when she is past ten it does not do so well, for commonly an old mare's colt will be heavy in labour. The proper time for covering, is reckoned from the end of the first quarter to the full moon, or at the full; for those *colts* will be stronger and hardier of nature; whereas 'tis observed in those that are covered after the change, that they will be tender and nice: but before the mare is covered, she should be taken into the house about six weeks, and be well fed with good hay and oats, well sifted, to the end she may have strength and feed to perform the office of generation.

As for the manner of covering, she must be brought out into some broad place, and tied to a post; then bring out some stone jade to dally with her, to provoke her to appetite; after which let the

the stallion be led out by two men, and let him ^{tear} her in the morning fasting, and when he is dismounting, let a pail of cold water be thrown upon her shape, which by reason of the coldness, will make her shrink in and truss up her body, whereby she is caused to retain the seed the better: then take away the stallion, and let the mare be put out of the hearing of the horse, and let her neither eat or drink in four or five hours after, and then give her a mash and white water: you may know if she stands to her covering, by her keeping a good stomach, and her not neighing at the sight of a horse; so likewise if she does not stale often, nor frequently open and shut her shape; or that her belly four days after covering be more gaunt, the hair be more sleek and close to her skin, and the like. Some there are who put the horse and mare together into an empty house for three or four nights, and take the horse away in the morning and feed him well, but the mare sparingly, and especially they give her but little water.

Now as for the ordering the mare after covering, let her be kept to the same diet as before, for three weeks or a month, lest the seed be impaired before it be formed in the womb; and let her be kept sweet and clean, without any exercise, during three weeks or a month; and in the house till *mid-day*, with her feet well pared, and with a thin pair of shoes on: take her up again about the latter end of *September*, if not before, and keep her to the end of her foaling.

If she cannot foal, hold her nostrils so that she cannot take her wind; or if that will not do, take the quantity of a walnut of *madder*, dissolve it into a pint of ale, and give it warm to her; and in case she cannot avoid her *Secundine*, then boil two or three handfuls of *fennel* in running-water, and put

half a pint thereof in as much sack, or for want thereof, a pint of strong beer or ale, with a fourth part of sallad oil, mixed together, and give it her lukewarm in her nostrils, and hold them close for a good space; or for want thereof, give her good green wheat or rye, but the last is best, and they are as effectual; and let her not eat her clean, for that is very unwholesome and will dry up her milk.

When she has foaled and licked her foal, milk and stroke her before the colt sucks, which will both cause her to bring down her milk and make it to multiply, and keep it so that it do not clod; and in case she becomes dry, boil as much milk as you can get from her with the leaves of *lavender* and *spike*, and bathe the udder with it warm, till it be broken, and the knobs and knots dissolved: her water now must be white water, which is bran put into water, and give her sweet mashes; and a month after foaling, let her have a mash with some *brimstone* and *saven* in it, which will be a great preservation to the colt; after which, if she be moderately laboured at plough or harrow, both she and the colt will be the better, provided she be kept from raw meats while she remains in the stable, which will both increase her milk and cause her colt to thrive the better; and care must be taken not to suffer the colt to suck her when she is hot, lest thereby you surfeit the colt.

In case you are desirous no mare should go barren, in the month of *July* or in the beginning of *August*, get a mare or two that have not been covered that year before, and enforce them to be horsed; when they shall be ready to be covered, you must turn them, with some other horse which you esteem not as your best horse, among your studs of mares, and so he covering the mare or mares you turned in with him into the stud, shall cause the rest of them, if any of them have not conceived at their first coverings

ings, to come to that horse again; whereby you shall be sure to keep no mare barren all the year, but have a colt of every mare, though not of your best horse. You may suffer your horse to run amongst your mares three weeks or a month; but if you turn him into your stud, putting in no mare with him ready to be covered, he will at his first entering beat all the mares, and perhaps hurt those that had conceived before, and so do more hurt than good.

Some reckon the best *recipe* to bring a mare in season and make her retain, is to give her to eat, for the space of eight days before you bring her to the horse, about two quarts of hemp-seed in the morning, and the same at night; but if she refuses to eat it, mix with it a little bran or oats, or else let her fast for a while; and if the stallion eats also of it, it will contribute much to generation.

It is a maxim, that a mare should never be horsed while she is bringing up her foal, because the foal to which she is giving suck, as well as that in her belly, will receive prejudice thereby, and the mare herself will be also sooner spent; but if you would have your mares covered, let it be seven or eight days after she has foaled, that she may have time to cleanse; and if it may be conveniently done, do not give her the stallion till she desires him, and also increase, by all means possible, that passion, by strong feeding, &c.

For the producing of *males*, the mare must be brought in season, and covered very early in the morning, any day before the fourth day of the moon until it be full, but never in the increase; and thus she will not fail to bring forth a male colt.

Mares, besides the many distempers they are liable to in common with horses, and which will be found under their several names, have some others, peculiar to their kind only, of which we shall speak briefly, and their cure. If your mares be barren

boil good store of the herb *agnus* in the water she drinks ; or stamp a good handful of leeks with four or five spoonfuls of wine, to which put some *cantharides*, and strain them all together, with a sufficient quantity of water to serve her two days together, by pouring the same into her nature, with a glister-pipe made for that purpose ; and at three days end offer the horse to her, and if he covers her, wash her nature twice together with cold water, or take a little quantity of *nitrum*, sparrows dung, and turpentine, wrought together, and made like a suppository, and putting that in her nature, it will do.

If you would have her be fruitful, boil good store of *motherwort* in the water she drinks:

If she loses her belly, which shews a consumption of the womb, give her a quart of brine to drink, having *mugwort* boiled therein.

If through good keeping she forsakes her food, give her for two or three days together, a ball of butter and *agnus castus* chopped together.

If she be subject to cast her foal, keep her at grass very warm, and once a week give her a good warm mash of drink, which secretly knits beyond expectation.

You are to observe, that mares go with foal eleven months and as many days as they are years old ; as for instance, a mare of nine years old, will carry her foal eleven months and nine days ; so that you may so order the covering of your mares, that their foals may be brought forth, if you will, at such times as there is abundance of grass. See STALLION and COLT.

Of STALLIONS.

A Stallion is an ungelt horse, designed for the covering of mares, in order to propagate the species ;
and

and when his stones are taken away, and he is gelt, is called a gelding.

Now in the chusing stone-horses, or stallions for mares, you ought to take great care that they neither have moon-eyes, watery-eyes, blood-shotten-eyes, splents, spavins, curbs, nor, if possible, any natural imperfections of any kind whatsoever: for if they have, their colts will take them hereditary from their parents.

But let them be the best, ablest, highest spirited, fair coloured and finest shaped; and a person should inform himself of all natural defects in them, of which none are free.

As for his age, he ought not to be younger, to cover a mare, than four years old, from which time forward he will beget colts till twenty.

Let the stallion be so high fed, as to be full of lust and vigour, and then brought to the place where the mares are; take off his hinder shoes, and let him cover a mare in hand twice or thrice, to keep him sober; then pull off his bridle, and turn him loose to the rest of the mares, which must be in a convenient close, with strong fences and good food, and there leave him till he has covered them all, so that they will take horse no more; by which time his courage will be pretty well cooled.

Ten or twelve mares are enough for one horse in the same year; it will be also necessary to have some little shed or hovel in the field, to which he may retreat to defend him from the rain, sun, and wind, which are very weakening to a horse: let there be likewise a rack and a manger to feed him in, during his covering-time, and it would not be amiss if one were to watch him during that time, for fear of any accident, and the better to know how often he covers each mare.

When he has done his duty, take him away from the mares, and remove them into some fresh pasture.

Take notice that when you would have mares covered, either in hand or otherwise, that both the stallion and mare ought to have the same feeding, *viz.* if the horse be at hay and oats, which are commonly called hard meats, the mare should be also at hard meat, otherwise she will not be so fit to hold.

In the like manner, if the stallion be at grass, you must also put the mare to grass.

Those mares which are in middling case, conceive the most easily; whereas those that are very fat, hold with great difficulty; those of them that are hot and in season, retain a great deal better; their heat exciting the stallion, who, on his part, performs the action with greater vigour and ardour.

And when you cover a mare in hand, in order that she may the more certainly hold, let the stallion and the mare be so placed in the stable, that they may see each other, keeping them so for some time, which will animate them both, and then they will hardly fail to generate.

For the ordering of a stallion, some give the following instructions:

Feed the stallion, for three months at least, before he is to cover, with good oats, peas, or beans, or with coarse bread, and a little hay, but a good deal of wheat straw, carrying him twice a day out to water, walking him up and down for an hour after he has drank, but without making him sweat.

If the stallion be not thus brought into wind before he covers, he will be in danger of becoming pursey, and broken winded; and if he be not well fed, he will not be able to perform his task, or at best the colts would be but pitiful and weak ones;
and

and though you should take great care to nourish him, yet you will take him in again very weak.

If you put him to many mares, he will not serve you so long, but his mane and tail will fall away by reason of poverty, and it will be a difficult matter to bring him to a good condition of body, against the year following.

He ought to have mares according to his strength, as twelve or fifteen, or at most not above twenty.

Of STABLES.

AS to the situation of a stable, it should be in a good air, and upon hard, firm, and dry ground, that in the winter the horse may come and go clean in and out; and, if it may be, it will be best if it be situated upon an ascent, that the urine, foul water, or any wet, may be conveyed away by trenches or sinks cut out for that purpose.

By no means let there be any hen-roosts, hog-sties, or houses of easement, or any other filthy smells near it, for hen-dung or feathers swallowed, oftentimes prove mortal, and the ill air of a jakes sometimes causes blindness; and the smell of swine is apt to breed the *farcin*; and there is no animal that delights more in cleanliness, nor is more offended at unwholesome favours than a horse.

Brick is better for building stables than *stone*, the latter being subject to sweating in wet weather, and the dampness and moisture causes rheums and catarrhs.

Let the walls be of a good convenient thickness, at least a brick and a half or two brick thick, both for the sake of safety and warmth in winter, and to defend him from being annoyed with the heat in summer, which would hinder his digesting his food.

It will be proper to have windows both on the east and on the north sides, that he may have the benefit of the north air in summer, and of the morning sun from the east in the winter.

Let the windows be glazed, and if they be shadded it will not only be the handsomer, but will be more convenient to let air in at pleasure; and let there be close wooden shutters, that you may darken the stable in the middle of the day, which will incline the horse to take his rest as well in the day as in the night.

That part of the floor on which the horse is to stand should be made of oaken planks, for they will be both easier and warmer for the horse to lie upon than stones; and be sure to lay them level, for if they are laid higher before than behind, (as they generally are in Inns and Horse-courser's stables, that their horses may appear to more advantage in stature) his hinder legs will swell, and he never can lie easily, because his hinder parts will be still slipping down.

Lay the planks cross-ways, and not length-ways, and sink a good trench underneath them, which may receive the urine through the holes bored in the planks, and convey it into some common receptacle.

Raise the ground behind him even with the planks, that he may continually stand upon a level, and let the floor behind him be paved with small pebble; and be sure to let that part of the stable where the racks stand be well wainscoted.

Place two rings at each side of his stall for his halter to run through, which should have a light wooden logger at the bottom of it, to poise it perpendicularly, but not so heavy as to tire the horse, or to hinder him from eating.

Some recommend a drawer or locker made in the wainscot partition, rather than a fixt manger, for him

him to eat his corn out of, which may be taken out to cleanse at pleasure.

Some again disapprove of this way of feeding, thinking it may spoil his chest, and that his blowing upon his hay will make it nauseous to his palate: but others again answer, that as to the spoiling of his chest, it rather strengthens it and makes it firm; whereas on the contrary, the lifting of his head up high to the rack, will make him withy-cragged. But the way before-mentioned he will feed as he lies, which will be for his ease. And as to the hay, that may be given him but by small quantities at a time; and there will be this advantage in receiving his hay on the ground, the prone posture will cleanse his head from rheum or pose, which he may happen by any ways to have gotten, and induce him to sneeze and throw out all manner of watery humours that may annoy his head.

If you have stable room enough you may make partitions, and at the head, towards the manger, board them to that height that one horse may not molest or smell to another, allowing each horse room enough to turn about and lie down at pleasure.

One of the stalls may be made convenient for your groom to lie in, in case of a match, or the sickness of a horse.

Behind the stalls may be made a range of presses, with pegs to hang up saddles, bridles, &c. and shelves for other utensils, pots for ointment, &c.

Let the floor over the stable be cieled, whether you make it a granary, or a lodging room for your groom, that no dust may fall from it upon your horses.

There are also other requisites, as a dung-yard, a pump, a conduit; and if some pond or running water were near, it were better.

Of B O W L I N G.

THE first and greatest cunning to be observed in bowling, is the right chusing your bowl, which must be suitable to the ground you design to run on. Thus for the close alleys your best choice is the flat bowl. 2. For open grounds of advantage, the round byassed bowl. 3. For green swards that are plain and level, the bowl that is as round as a ball.

The next thing that requires your care, is the chusing out your ground, and preventing the winding hangings, and many turning advantages of the same, whether it be in open wide places, as bares and bowling-greens, or in close bowling alleys.

Lastly, have your judgment about you, to observe and distinguish the risings, fallings, and advantages of the places where you bowl: have your wits about you, to avoid being rook'd of your money; and have your understanding about you, to know your best time and opportunity for this recreation; and finally, a studious care of your words and passions; and then bowl away, and you may deserve, *well have you bowled indeed.*

Coursing with GREYHOUNDS,

IS a recreation in great esteem with many gentlemen. It affords greater pleasure than hunting in some respects. As, first, because it is sooner ended. Secondly, it does not require so much toil. Thirdly, the game for the most part always in sight. Fourthly, in regard to the delicate qualities and shape of the greyhound.

There are three several courses with greyhounds, *viz.* at the deer, at the hare, and at the fox.

For the deer there are two sorts of courses, the one
in

in the paddock, and the other either in the forest or purlieu.

For the paddock, there must be the greyhound, and the terrier, which is a kind of mungrel greyhound, whose business is to drive away the deer before the greyhounds are slipt, and most usually a brace or leash are let slip; seldom more than two braces.

HARE-HUNTING.

THE best way in this, is to go and find out one sitting, which is easily done by walking cross the lands, either stubble, fallow or corn, and casting your eye up and down; for in the summer season they frequent such places for fear of ticks, which are common in woods; also the rain and the fall of the leaf offend them.

The rest of the year you must beat up and down with poles to start them out of their forms and retreats, and some hares will not stir, until they are almost touched, and it is a certain sign that such hares will make an excellent course.

If a hare sit near any close or covert, and have her head towards the same with a fair field behind her, you may ride with as much company as you have between her and the covert before she is put up, and then she is likely to make her course towards the champaign, for she seldom takes the same way that her head is when she sits in her form.

When a hare is first started, you give her ground or law, which is commonly twelvescore yards or more, according to the ground where she sits, or else you lose much of your sport, by putting an end to it too soon; and it is very pleasant to see the turnings
and

and windings, that the hare will make to save herself, which sometimes proves effectual to her.

There are four sorts of *hares*; some live in the mountains, some in the fields, some in marshes, some every where, without any certain place of abode. The *mountain hares* are the swiftest, the *field hares* are not so nimble, and those of the *marshes* are the slowest; but the wandering *hares* are most dangerous to follow, for they are so cunning in the ways and mazes of the fields, running up the hills and rocks, because by custom they know a nearer way, with other tricks, to the confusion of the dogs, and discouragement of the hunters.

The hares of the mountains often exercise themselves in the vallies and plains, and through practice grow acquainted with the nearest ways to their forms, or constant places of abode; so that when at any time they are hunted in the fields, such is their subtle dodging, that they will dally with the huntsman till they seem to be almost taken, and then on a sudden take the nearest way to the mountains, and so take sanctuary in the inaccessible places, to which neither dogs nor horses can or dare ascend.

Hares which frequent bushes and brakes are not able to endure labour, nor are very swift, because of the pain in the feet, growing fat by means of idleness, and not using themselves to running.

The *field hare* being leaner of body, and oftner chased, is more difficultly taken, by reason of her singular agility; for when she begins her course, she bounds up from the ground as if she flew, afterwards passes through all brambles, over thick bushes and hedges, with all expedition; and if she cometh into deep grass or corn, she easily delivers herself and slides through it, always holding up one ear, and bending it at pleasure, to be the moderator of her chase.

Neither

Neither is she so improvident and prodigal of her strength, as to spend it all in one course, but she has regard to the force of her pursuer, who if he be slow and sluggish, she is not profuse of her strength, nor uses her utmost swiftness, but only advances gently before the dogs, yet safely from their clutches, reserving her greatest strength for the time of greatest necessity, knowing she can out-run the dogs at her pleasure, and therefore will not strain herself more than she is urged.

But if she be pursued by a dog that is swifter than the rest, then she puts on with all the force she can, and having once left the hunters and dogs a great way behind her, she makes to some little hill, or rising ground, where she raises herself upon her hinder legs, that thereby she may observe how far off, or how near her pursuers are.

The younger hares, by reason of their weak limbs, tread heavier on the earth than the older, and therefore leave the greater scent behind them.

At a year old they run very swiftly, and their scent is stronger in the woods than in the plain fields; and if they lie down on the earth (as they love to do) in red fallow grounds, they are easily descried.

Their footsteps in winter are more apparent than in summer, because as the nights are longer, they travel farther; neither do they scent in winter mornings so soon as it is day, till the frost is a little thawed; but especially their footsteps are uncertain at the full of the moon, for then they leap and play together, scattering or putting out their scent or favour; and in the spring time also, when they do engender, they confound one another's footsteps by multitudes.

Hares and rabbits are mischievous to nurseries and newly planted orchards, by peeling off the bark of the plants; for the prevention of which some bind ropes
about

about the trees to a sufficient height; some daub them with tar, which being of itself hurtful to young plants, the mischief is prevented by mixing with it any kind of grease, and boiling it over a fire, so as both may incorporate; then with a brush or little broom, daub over the stem of the tree as high as a rabbit or hare can reach; do this in *November*, and it will secure the trees for that whole year, it being in the winter time only in which they feed upon the bark.

Also some thin stuff out of a house of office, or the thick tempered with water, has been often applied with good success; or the white wash made use of by plaitterers for whitening houses, done once a year over the trees with a brush, will preserve them from hares, deers, and other animals.

As for such hares as are bred in warrens, the warreners have a crafty device to fatten them, which has been found by experience to be effectual; and that is, by putting wax into their ears to make them deaf, and then turning them into the place where they are to feed, where, being freed from the fear of hounds, and for want of hearing, they grow fat before others of their kind.

It is generally believed, that a hare naturally knows the change of weather from one twenty-four hours to another.

When she goes to her form, she will suffer the dew to touch her as little as she can, but takes the high-ways and beaten paths: again when she rises out of her form, if she couches her ears and scut, and runs not very fast at first, it is an infallible sign that she is old and crafty.

They go to buck commonly in *January*, *February*, and *March*, and sometimes all the warm months; sometimes seeking the buck at seven or eight miles distant

distant from the place they usually sit at, following the highways, &c.

To distinguish a male hare from the female, you may know him as you hunt him to his form, by his beating the hard highways; he also feeds farther out in the plains, and makes his doublings and crossings much wider, and of greater compass than the female doth; whereas the female will keep close by some covert side, turning and winding in the bushes like a coney; and if she goes to relief in the corn fields, she seldom crosses over the furrow, but follows them along, staying upon the thickest tufts of corn to feed.

You may likewise know a buck at his rising out of his form, by his hinder parts, which are more upon the whitish; and his shoulders, before he rises, will be redder than the doe's, having some loose long hairs growing on them.

Again, his head is shorter and better trussed, his hairs about his lips longer, and his ears shorter and more gray; the hairs upon the female's chin are of a blackish grey.

And besides, when hounds hunt a female hare, she will use more crossing and doubling, seldom making out end-ways before the hounds: whereas the male acts contrarily, for having once made a turn or two about his form, then farewell hounds, for he will frequently lead them five or six miles before ever he will turn his head.

When you see that your hounds have found where a hare hath passed to relief upon the highway side, and hath much doubled and crossed upon dry places, and never much broken out nor relieved in the corn, it is a sign she is but lately come thither, and then commonly she will stay upon some high place to look about her, and to chuse out a place to form in, which she will be loth to part with.

The craft and subtilty of a HARE.

As of all chaces the *hare* makes the greatest pastime and pleasure, so it is a great delight and satisfaction to see the craft of this small animal for her self-preservation.

And the better to understand them, consider what weather it is; if it is rainy, then the hare will hold the highways more than at any other time, and if she come to the side of any young grove or spring, she will scarcely enter, but squat down by the side of it till the hounds have overshot her, and then she will return the very same way she came, to the place from whence she was started, and will not go by the way into any covert, for fear of the wet and dew that hangs upon the boughs.

In this case the huntsman ought to stay an hundred paces before he comes to the wood-side, by which means he will perceive whether she return as afore-said, which if she do, he must halloo in the hounds, and call them back, and that presently, that the hounds may not think it the counter she came first.

The next thing that is to be observed, is the place where the hare sits, and upon what wind she makes her form, either upon the north or south wind; she will not willingly run into the wind, but run up on a side, or down the wind; but if she form in the water, it is a sign she is foul and measles: if you hunt such a one, have a special regard all the day to the brook-sides, for there, and near plashees, she will make all her crossings, doublings, &c.

Some *hares* have been so crafty, that as soon as they have heard the sound of the horn, they would instantly start out of their form, though it was the distance of a quarter of a mile, and go and swim in some pool, and rest upon some rush bed in the midst of it, and would not stir from thence till they have heard

heard the horn again, and then have started out again, swimming to land, and have stood up before the hounds four hours before they could kill them, swimming and using all subtilties and crossings in the water.

Nay, such is the natural craft and subtilty of a hare, that sometimes after she has been hunted three hours, she will start a fresh hare, and squat into the same form.

Others having been hunted a considerable time, will creep under the door of a sheep-cote, and there hide themselves among the sheep, or when they have been hard hunted, will run in among a flock of sheep, and will by no means be gotten out from among them, till the hounds are coupled up and the sheep driven into their pens.

Some of them (and that seems somewhat strange) will take the ground like a coney, and that is called *going to the vault*.

Some *hares* will go up on one side of the hedge and come down the other, the thickness of the hedge being the only distance between the courses.

A *hare* that has been sorely hunted, has got upon a quick-set hedge, and ran a good way upon the top thereof, and then leaped off upon the ground.

And they will frequently betake themselves to furz-bushes, and will leap from the one to the other, whereby the hounds are frequently in default.

Some affirm that a *hare*, after she has been hunted two hours or more, has at length, to save herself, got upon an old wall, six feet high from the ground, and hid herself in a hole that was made for scaffold-ing; and that some *hares* have swam over the rivers *Trent* and *Severn*.

A *hare* is supposed not to live above seven years at the most, especially the bucks, and if a buck and a doe shall keep one quarter together, they will never
suffer

suffer any strange *bare* to sit with them ; and therefore it is said by way of proverb, "the more you hunt, the more hares you shall have ;" because when you have killed one *bare*, another will come and possess his form.

A *bare* hath a greater scent, and is more eagerly hunted by the hounds, when she feeds and relieves upon green corn, than at any other time in the year ; and yet there are some *hares* that naturally give a greater scent than others, as the large *wood hares*, and such as are foul and meased keeping near to the waters : but the small red *bare*, which is not much bigger than a coney, is neither of so strong a scent, nor so eagerly hunted.

The females are more crafty and politic than the males, they double and turn shorter than they, which is unpleasant to the hounds ; for it is troublesome to them to turn so often, delighting more in an end-way chace, running with all their force : for those *hares* which double and cross so often, it is requisite at default, to cast the greater compass about, when you beat to make it out ; for so you will find all her subtilties, and yet need not stick upon any of them, but only where she went on forward : by this means you will abate her force, and compel her to need doubling and crossing.

How to enter Hounds to a HARE.

Let the Huntsman be sure in the first place to make them very well acquainted with himself and his voice, and let them understand the horn, which he should never blow but when there is a good cause for it.

When you enter a young kennel of hounds, have a special regard to the country where you make the first quarry, for so they are like to succeed accordingly ; since their being entered first in a plain and champaign

champaign country, will make them ever after delight more to hunt therein than elsewhere; and it is the same with the coverts.

The best season to enter young hounds, is in *September* and *October*, for then the weather is temperate, and neither too hot nor too cold; and this is the season to find young *hares* that have never been hunted, which are silly, and ignorant of the politic crossings, doublings, &c. of their fires, running commonly end-ways, frequently squatting, and as often starting; by which encouragement the hounds are the better entered.

Some *hares* hold the high-beaten ways only, where the hounds can have no scent; therefore when the Huntsman finds his hounds at a default in the highway, let him hunt on until he find where the *hare* hath broken from the highway, or hath found some dale or fresh place where the hounds may recover scent, looking narrowly on the ground as he goes, to see to find the footing or pricking of the *hare*.

There are other places wherein a hound can find no scent; and that is, in fat and rotten ground, which stick to the feet of the *hare*, and this is called *carrying*, and so of consequence she leaves no scent behind her.

There are also certain months in the year in which a hound can find no scent, and that is in the spring-time, by reason of the fragrant scent of flowers, and the like.

But avoid hunting in hard frosty weather as much as you can, for that will be apt to furbate or founder your hounds, and cause them to lose their claws; besides, at that time a *hare* runs better than at other times, the soles of her feet being hairy.

What time of the year is best for HARE hunting; how to find her, start her, and chase her.

The best time to begin *hare hunting*, is about the middle of *September*, and to end towards the latter end of *February*, lest you destroy the early brood of leverets.

And besides, when the winter comes on, the moistness and coolness of the earth increases, which is agreeable to the nature of the hounds, and very acceptable, they not liking extremes either of hot or cold weather.

Those hounds that are two years old and upwards, may be exercised three times a week; and the hunting so often will do them good, provided they be well fed; and they may be kept the greatest part of the day, both to try their stoutness, and to make them stout.

If any hound shall have found the trail of a *hare*, when she hath relieved that night, the huntsman ought not to be too hasty, but let the hounds make it themselves; and when he perceives that they begin to draw in together, and to call on freshly, then he ought to encourage them, especially that hound which hunteth best, frequently calling him by his name.

Here you may take notice, that a *hare* leaveth better scent when she goes to relief than when she goeth towards her form; for when she relieves in the field, she coucheth her body low upon the ground, passing often over one piece of ground, to find where the best food lies, and thus leaveth the best scent, crossing also sometimes; besides, when she goes to her form she commonly takes the highways, doubling, crossing, and leaping as lightly as she can; in which place, the hounds can have no scent by reason of the lust, &c. and yet they will squat by the sides of high-

highways, and therefore let the huntsman beat very well the sides of those highways.

Now having found where a *hare* hath relieved in some pasture or corn-field, you must then consider the season of the year, and what weather it is; for if it be in the spring-time or summer, a hare will not then sit in bushes, because they are frequently infested with pismires, snakes and adders, but will sit in corn-fields and open places.

In the winter-time, they sit near towns and villages, in tufts of thorns and brambles, especially when the wind is northerly or southerly.

According to the season and nature of the place where the hare is accustomed to sit, there beat with your hounds, and start her; which is much better sport then trailing of her from her relief to her form.

After the hare has been started, and is on foot, then step in where you saw her pass, and halloo in your hounds, until they have all undertaken it, and go on with it in full cry; then recheat to them with your horn, following fair and softly at first, making not too much noise either with horn or voice; for at the first, hounds are apt to overshoot the chace through too much heat.

But when they have run the space of an hour, and you see the hounds are well in with it, and stick well upon it, then you may come in nearer with the hounds, because by that time their heat will be cooled, and they will hunt more soberly.

But, above all things, mark the first doubling, which must be your direction for the whole day; for all the doublings that she shall make afterwards will be like the former, and according to the polices that you shall see her use, and the place where you hunt, you must make your compasses great or little, long or short, to help the defaults, always seeking the moistest
and

and most commodious places for the hounds to scent in.

To conclude; those who delight in hunting the hare, must rise early, lest they be deprived of the scent of her foot-steps, by which means the dogs will be incapacitated to follow their game; for the nature of the scent is such that it will not remain so long, but suddenly in a manner every hour vanisheth away.

The laws observed in coursing the HARE.

1. That he that is chosen Fewterer, or that lets loose the greyhounds, shall receive the greyhounds matched to run together into his leash as soon as he comes into the field, and follow next to the hare-finder, or he who is to start the hare until he come unto the form, and no horseman or footman is to go before, or on any side, but directly behind, for the space of about forty yards.

2. You ought to course a hare with no more than a brace of greyhounds.

3. The hare-finder ought to give the hare three so-hoes before he puts her from her form or seat, to the end the dogs may gaze about, and attend her starting.

4. They ought to have twelve score yards law before the dogs are loosed, unless there be any danger of losing her.

5. That dog that gives the first turn, if after that there be neither cote, flip, or wrench, he wins the wager.

6. If one dog gives the first turn, and the other bears the hare, he that bears the hare shall win the wager.

7. A go by, or bearing the hare, is accounted equivalent to two turns.

8. If neither dog turn the hare, he that leads last to the covert wins.

9. If

9. If one dog turn the hare, serves himself, and turns her again, it is as much as a cote, and a cote is esteemed two turns.

10. If all the course be equal, he that bears the hare shall win; and if he be not born, the course shall be adjudged dead.

11. If a dog take fall in his course, and yet perform his part, he may challenge the advantage of a turn more than he gave.

12. If a dog turn the hare, serve himself, and give divers cotes, and yet in the end stand still in the field, the other dog, if he turns home to the coverts, although he gives no turn, shall be adjudged to win the wager.

13. If by misfortune, a dog be rid over in his course, the course is void, and to say the truth, he that did the mischief ought to make reparation for the damage.

14. If a dog give the first and last turn, and there be no other advantage betwixt them, he that gives the odd turn shall win.

15. A cote is when the greyhound goeth end-ways by his fellow, and gives the hare a turn.

16. A cote serves for two turns, and two trippings or jerkins for a cote; and if she turneth not quite about, she only wrencheth.

17. If there be no cotes given between a brace of greyhounds but that one of them serves the other at turning; then he that gives the hare most turns wins the wager: and if one gives as many turns as the other, then he that beareth the hare wins the wager.

18. Sometimes the hare doth not turn but wrench; for she is not properly said to turn, except she turn as it were round, and two wrenches stand for a turn.

19. He that comes in first to the death of the hare, takes her up, and saves her from breaking,

cherisheth the dogs, and cleanses their mouths from the wool, is adjudged to have the hare for his pains.

20. Those that are judges of the leash, must give their judgment presently before they depart out of the field.

Coursing the F O X.

IN coursing a fox, no other art is required than standing close, and on a clear wind on the outside of some grove, where you are to expect his coming out, and then give him head enough, otherwise he will turn back to the covert: for the slowest greyhound will be swift enough to overtake him; and all the hazard of this course is the spoiling your dog by the fox, which oftentimes happens; and for this reason, you should not run any that are worth much at this chase; but such that are hard bitten dogs that will seize any thing.

FOX HUNTING.

The shape and proportion of this beast is so well known, being so common, that it is needless to describe him.

His nature is in many respects like that of a wolf, for they bring as many cubs at a litter the one as the other; but in this they differ, the fox littering deep under the ground, but the wolf doth not.

A bitch fox is very difficult to be taken when she is bragged and with cub, for then she will lie near her burrow, into which she runs, upon hearing the least noise: and indeed at any time it is somewhat difficult; for the fox (and so the wolf) is a very subtle creature.

Fox-hunting is a very pleasant exercise, for by reason of his strong, hot scent, he makes an excellent cry:

cry : and as his scent is hottest at hand, so it dies the soonest.

And besides, he never flies far before the hounds, trusting not to his legs, strength, or champagne grounds, but strongest converts. When he can no longer stand before the ground, he then taketh earth, and must be dug out.

If greyhounds course him on a plain, his last refuge is to piss on his tail, and slap it in their faces as they come near him ; and sometimes squirting his thicker excrements upon them, to make them give over the course or pursuit.

When a bitch fox goes a clicketting and seeking for a dog, she cries with a hollow voice, not unlike the howling of a mad dog, and in the same manner she cries when she misses any of her cubs ; but never makes any cry at all when she is killing, but defends herself to the last gasp.

A fox will prey upon any thing he can overcome, and will feed upon any sort of carrion : but their dainties, and the food they most delight in, is poultry.

They are very injurious and destructive to coney-warrens, and will sometimes kill hares by deceit and subtilty, but not by swift running.

The fox is taken with hounds, greyhounds, terriers, nets and gins.

For HUNTING above ground.

To hunt a fox with hounds, you must draw about groves, thickets, and bushes, near villages ; for in such places he lurks to prey upon poultry, &c. but if you can find one, it will be necessary to stop up his earth the night before you intend to hunt, and that about midnight, for then he goes out to prey ; and this must be done by laying two white sticks across in his way, which will make him imagine it

to be some gin or trap laid for him, or else they may be stopped up close with black thorns and earth together.

The best hunting a fox above ground, is in *January, February, and March*, for then you shall best see your hounds hunting, and best find his earthing; and besides, at those times the fox's skin is best in season.

Again, the hounds hunt the fox best in the coldest weather, because he leaveth a very strong scent behind him; yet in cold weather it chills fastest.

At first only cast off your sure finders, and as the drag mends, so add more as you dare trust them, avoid casting off too many hounds at once, because woods and coverts are full of sundry chaces, and so you may engage them in too many at one time.

Let such as you cast off at first be old staunch hounds which are sure, and if you hear such a hound call on merrily, you may cast off some others to him, and when they run it on the full cry, cast off the rest, and thus you shall compleat your pastime.

The words of comfort are the same which are used in other chaces, attended with the same hallooings, and other ceremonies.

The hounds should be left to kill the fox themselves, and to worry and tare him as much as they please: some hounds will eat him with eagerness.

When he is dead, hang him at the end of a pike-staff, and halloo in all your hounds to bay him; but reward them not with any thing belonging to the fox; for it is not good, neither will the hounds in common eat it.

Of HUNTING a FOX under ground.

If in case a fox does so far escape as to earth, countrymen must be got together with shovels, spades,

spades, mattocks, pickaxes, &c. to dig him out, if they think the earth not too great.

They make their earths as near as they can in ground that is hard to dig, as in clay, stoney ground, or amongst the roots of trees; and their earths have commonly but one hole; and that is straight a long way in before you come at their couch.

Sometimes craftily they take possession of a badger's old burrow, which hath a variety of chambers, holes and angles.

Now to facilitate this way of hunting the fox: the huntsman must be provided with one or two terriers to put into the earth after him, that is to fix him in an angle: for the earth often consists of many angles; the use of the terrier is to know where he lies, for as soon as he finds him he continues baying or barking, so that which way the noise is heard that way dig to him.

However, I shall here add, that in the first place you must have such as are able to dig, so your terriers must be garnished with bells hung in collars, to make the fox bolt the sooner; besides, the collars will be some defence to the terriers.

The instruments to dig withal are these; a sharp pointed spade, which serves to begin the trench, where the ground is hardest, as broader tools will not so well enter; the round hollowed spade, which is useful to dig among roots, having very sharp edges; the broad flat spade to dig withal, when the trench has been pretty well opened, and the ground softer; mattocks and pickaxes to dig in hard ground, where a spade will do but little service; the coal rake to cleanse the hole, and to keep it from stopping up; clamps, wherewith you may take either fox or badger out alive, to make sport with afterwards.

And it would be very convenient to have a pail of water to refresh your terriers with, after they are come out of the earth to take breath.

Of D O G S.

AS there is no country in the world where there is not plenty of dogs, so no animals can boast of a greater variety, both in kind and shape; some being for buck, others for bear, bull, boar, and some for hare, coney and hedge-hog, while others are for other uses, according to their various natures, properties and kinds: neither are the uses and kinds of them so general, but their bringing up is also as easy, there being no great regard to be had as to their food, for they will eat any thing but the flesh of their own species, which cannot be so dressed by the art of man, but they will find out by their smelling, and so avoid it.

A black hound is not to be despised, especially if marked with white, and not red spots; seeing this whiteness proceeds from a flegmatic constitution, which hinders him from forgetting the lesson he is taught, and makes him obedient; whereas dogs that have red spots are for the most part very fiery, and hard to be managed, by reason of the bilious humour that prevails, and causes this irregularity within them: and therefore a black dog with white spots is valuable, being usually hardy enough, will hunt well, is strong and swift, and holds out a long time; he will not forsake the chace, and when you are beating the water for sport, he will not be frightened at it; and lastly, he is the more esteemed, because those distempers incident to dogs, seldom befall him.

There are some grey coloured dogs that are good, and others you ought not to meddle with; that is, mongrels,

mongrels, which come from a hound bitch that has been lined by a dog of another kind, or from a bitch of another kind, that has been lined by a hound; hounds cannot be good if they do not entirely retain the nature that is peculiar to them; and when they do, grey dogs are to be coveted, because they are cunning, never faulter, and grow not discouraged in the quest.

Yellow dogs, are those which have red spots, inclining to brown; and as choler is the most predominant humour in this animal, so he is found to be of a giddy nature, and impatient, when the beast he follows makes turns, seeing he still runs forwards to find him, which is a great fault; and therefore they are seldom made use of to hunt any other than the wolf, or such black beasts as are rarely inclined to turnings: they are too swift, open but very little, especially in very hot weather; they are naturally impatient, and therefore hard to be taught, as they are uneasy under correction.

Opposite to the deep mouthed or southern hound, are the long and slender hounds, called the *fleet*, or *northern hound*; which are very swift, as not being of so heavy a body, nor having so large ears: these will exercise your horses, and try their strength; they are proper for open, level, and champagne countries, where they may run in view, and full speed; for they will hunt more by the eye than by the nose, and will run down a hare in an hour, and sometimes sooner: but the fox will exercise them longer and better.

Between these two extremes there are a middle sort of dogs, which partake of both their qualities as to strength and swiftness, in a reasonable proportion: they are generally bred by crossing the strains, and are excellent in such countries as are mixed, *viz.* some mountains, some inclosures, some plains and

some woodlands; for they will go through thick and thin, neither need they be helped over hedges, as the huntsmen are often forced to do by others.

A true, right shaped, deep-mouthed hound, should have a round, thick head, wide nostrils, open and wide upwards, his ears large and thin, hanging lower than his chops, the fleeces of his upper lip should be longer than those of his nether chops, the chime of his back great and thick, strait and long, and rather bending out than inclining in; his thighs well trussed, his haunches large, his fillets round and large, his tail or stern strong set on, waxing taper-wise towards the top, his hair under his belly rough and long, his legs large and lean, his feet dry and hard, with strong claws and high knuckles: in the whole, he ought to be of so just a symmetry, that when he stands level, you may not discern which is highest, his fore or hinder parts.

For the *northern* or *sleet hound*, his head and nose ought to be slender and longer, his back broad, his belly gaunt, his joints long, and his ears thicker and shorter; in a word, he is in all parts slender made, and framed after the mould of a greyhound.

By crossing those breeds, as before observed, you may bring your kennel to such a composition as you think fit, every man's fancy being to be preferred; and it is a well known saying,

*So many men, so many minds;
So many hounds, so many kinds.*

Though I shall refer the reader to the diseases incident to dogs, under their respective heads, yet their being bitten or stung by some venomous creatures, and others being not so easily reducible to an article by itself, it shall be added here; and when they are stung by some adder, or other insect of that nature,
you

you must take an handful of the herb cross-wort, gentian, and as much rue, the same quantity of Spanish pepper, thin broth, ends of broom and mint, of all an equal quantity; when this is done, take some white wine, and make a decoction of the whole, letting it boil for an hour in a pot; then strain the whole, into which put an ounce of dissolved treacle, and let the dog swallow it, and observe to wash the bite therewith: if a dog is bitten by a fox, anoint it with oil wherein you have boiled some rue and worms.

Of DOG-MADNESS.

Dog-madness is a distemper very common among all sorts of dogs; easy to be prevented, but hard to be cured: there are no less than seven sorts of madness, amongst which some are esteemed incurable.

The symptoms of this disease are many, and easily discerned; when any dog separates himself contrary to his former use, become melancholy, or droops his head, forbears eating, and as he runs snatches at every thing; if he often looks upwards, and that his stern at his setting on be a little erect, and the rest hanging down; if his eyes be red, his breath strong, his voice hoarse, and that he drivels and foams at the mouth, you may be assured he has this distemper.

The seven sorts of madness are as follow: of which the two first are incurable, *viz.* the *hot burning madness*, and *running madness*; they are both very dangerous; for all things they bite and draw blood from, will have the same distemper; they generally seize on all they meet with, but chiefly on dogs: their pain is so great, it soon kills them. The five curable madnesses are:

Sleeping madness; so called from the dog's great drowsiness, and almost continual sleeping; and this is caused by the little worms that breed in the mouth

of the stomach, from corrupt humours, vapours, and fumes which ascend to his head: for cure of which take six ounces of the juice of wormwood, two ounces of the powder of hartshorn burnt, and two drachms of agaric; mix all these together in a little white wine, and give it the dog to drink in a drenching horn.

Dumb madness lies also in the blood, and causes the dog not to feed, but to hold his mouth always wide open, frequently putting his feet to his mouth, as if he had a bone in his throat: to cure this, take the juice of black hellebore, the juice of *spatula putrida*, and of rue, of each four ounces: strain them well, and put thereto two drachms of unprepared scammony, and being mixed well together, put it down the dog's throat with a drenching horn, keeping his head up for some time, lest he cast it out again; then bleed him in the mouth, by cutting two or three veins in his gums.

Lank madness is so called, by reason of the dog's leanness and pining away: for cure, give them a purge as before directed, and also bleed them; but some say there is no cure for it.

Rheumatic, or flavering madness, occasions the dog's head to swell, his eyes to look yellow, and he will be always flavering and drivelling at the mouth; to cure which, take four ounces of the powder of the roots of polipody of the oak, six ounces of the juice of fennel roots, with the like quantity of the roots of mistletoe, and four ounces of the juice of ivy; boil all these together in white wine, and give it to the dog as hot as he can drink it, in a drenching horn.

Falling madness is so termed because it lies in the dog's head, and makes them reel as they go, and to fall down; for cure, take four ounces of the juice of briony, and the same quantity of the juice of peony, with

with four drachms of stavesacre pulverized; mix these together, and give it to the dog in a drenching horn; also let him bleed in the ears, and in the two veins that come down his shoulders; and indeed bleeding is necessary for all sorts of madness in dogs.

To prevent dogs from being mad that are bitten by mad dogs, that is done by bathing them; in order to which take a barrel or bucking tub full of water, into which put about a bushel and a half of foot, which must be stirred well, that it may be dissolved; then put in the dog that is bitten, and plunge him over head and ears seven or eight times therein, and it will prevent his being mad; but he should also be blooded.

When dogs happen to be bit as aforesaid, there is nothing better than their licking the place with their own tongues, if they can reach it; if not, then let it be washed with butter and vinegar made lukewarm, and let it afterwards be anointed with *Venice* turpentine: it is also good to piss upon the wound; but above all, take the juice of the stalks of strong tobacco boiled in water, bathe the place therewith, also wash him in sea water, or water artificially made salt: give him likewise a little mithridate inwardly in two or three spoonfuls of sack, and so keep him apart; and if you find him, after some time, still to droop, the best way is to hang him.

It may not be amiss to add what a late author advises every one who keeps a dog, which is to have him wormed, and is a thing of little trouble and charge, and what he believes would prevent their being mad; and if they are, he is of opinion that it prevents their biting any other creature; for he asserts he had three dogs bit by mad dogs, at three several times, that were wormed, and though they died mad, yet they did not bite, nor do any mischief to any thing he had; and having a mind to make a full ex-

periment of it, he shut one of them up in a kennel, and put to him a dog he did not value: that the mad dog would often run at the other dog to bite him; but he found his tongue so much swelled in his mouth, that he could not make his teeth meet; that that dog, though he kept him with the mad dog till he died, yet he did not ail any thing, though he kept him two years afterwards, and gave him no remedies to prevent any harm, which might come from the biting of the mad dog.

The best remedy is this; take white hellebore and grate it with a grater to powder, which must be mixed with butter, and given to the dog; the dose must be proportioned to the size of the dog; to a very small lap-dog you may give three grains, to a large mastiff sixteen grains, and so in proportion to other sizes. He adds, that the best way is to give him a small quantity at first, that it may be increased as it is found to work, or not to work; but that as it is a strong vomit, and will make the dogs sick for a little time, so they must be kept warm that day it is given them, and the next night, and they must not have cold water; but when it has done working, towards the afternoon give them some warm broth, and the next morning give them the same before you let them out of the house or kennel.

The same author says this is an extraordinary remedy for the mange; that he never knew three doses fail of curing any dog that had it, except he had a surfeit with it; which if he had, let him blood also, and anoint him two or three times over with gunpowder and soap, beat it up together, and it will cure him.

*The choice of a DOG and BITCH for breeding good
WHELPS.*

The bitch ought to be one of a good kind, being strong and well-proportioned in all parts, having her ribs and flanks great and large.

Let the dog that lines her be of a good fair breed ; and let him be young, if you intend to have light and hot hounds ; for if the dog be old, the whelps will participate of his dull and heavy nature.

If your bitch do not grow proud of her own accord so soon as you would have her, you may make her so by giving her the following broth ;

Boil two heads of garlick, half a castor's stone, the juice of cresses, and about twelve *Spanish* flies, in a pipkin that holds a pint, together with some mutton, and make broth of it ; and give of this to the bitch two or three times, and she will not fail to grow proud, and the same pottage given to the dog, will make him inclinable to copulation.

After your bitch has been lined and is with puppy, you must not let her hunt, for that will be the way to make her cast her whelps ; but let her walk up and down unconfined in the house and court ; never locking her up in her kennel ; for she is then impatient of food, and therefore you must make her some hot broth once a day.

If you would spay your bitch, it must be done before she has ever had a litter of whelps ; and in spaying her take not away all the roots and strings of the veins ; for if you do, it will prejudice her reins, and hinder her swiftness ever after ; but by leaving some behind, it will make her much the stronger, and more hardy.

But by no means do not spay her while she is proud, for that will endanger her life ; but you may
do

do it fifteen days after ; but the best time of all is when the whelps are shaped within her.

Of the WATER Spaniel ; how to train, and order him for the game in fowling.

The water dog is of such general use, and so common amongst us, that there needs no great description of him ; but there are great differences amongst them, as well in proportion as otherwise.

As to colour, the curious will make a difference, as the black to be the best and hardiest ; the spotted or pied, quickest of scent, and the liver-hewed quickest in swimming ; but, in truth, colour is nothing material, for without doubt there are good and bad of all colours, and that by experience is found ; but his breeding, training up, and coming of a good kind, are the chief things ; yet it must be confessed, that as to handsomeness, the colour is to be regarded, so is the proportion as to his shape ; and then his head should be round, with curled hair, his ears broad and hanging, his eyes full and lively, his nose short, his lips like unto a hound's, his neck thick and short, his shoulders broad, his legs straight, his chine square, his ribs with a compass, his buttocks round, his thighs brawny, his belly gaunt, his pasterns strong and dew-clawed, and his fore-feet long and round, with his hair in general long and curled, not loose and shagged ; for the first sheweth hardiness and strength to endure the water, and the other much tenderness and weakness.

Now for the training and bringing him up ; you can't begin too early to teach him obedience, when he can but lap, for that is the principal thing to be learned ; for being made to obey, he is then ready to do your commands ; therefore so soon as he can lap teach him to couch and lie close, not daring to stir from that posture without your commands ; and the better

better to effect this, always cherish him when he does your will, and correct him when he disobeys; and be sure to observe, that in the first teaching him you never let him eat any thing, but when he does something to deserve it, that he may thereby know, that food is a thing that cometh not by chance, or by a liberal hand, but only for a reward for well-doing, and this will make him not only willing to learn, but apt to remember what he is taught without blows; and to that end, have no more teachers than one, for variety breed confusion, as teaching divers ways, so that he can learn no way well.

Another thing is, you must be very constant to the words of direction by which you teach him, chusing such as are most pertinent to that purpose; and those words that you first use, do not alter, for dogs take notice of the sound, not of the *English*, so that the least alteration puts them to a stand. For example, if you teach him to couch at the word *down*, this will be a known command unto him; and I am of opinion, that to use more words than what is necessary, for one and the same thing, is to overload his memory, and cause forgetfulness in him.

And this method should be observed as to the setting-dog.

You must teach him also to know the word of correction, and reprehension, for no lesson can be taught without a fault; and no fault should escape without reprehension, or at the least of chiding, and in this be constant to a word; as, *Go too firrah, rascal*, or the like; which at first should be used with a lash or jerk, to make him know that it is a word of wrath or anger; neither must such words proceed from you lovingly, or gently, but with passion and roughness of voice, together with fierceness of looks, that the whelp may tremble when he hears you speak thus. You must have certain words of cherishing when he hath done well,
that

that he may be thereby encouraged, as, *That's a good boy, well done*, or the like, using therewith chearfulness of speech, without actions of favour, as spitting in his mouth, clapping him on his back, and the like; you must also use some words of advice, that when he is at his sport, he may the better perform the same, and they may serve to spur or put him forward with more chearfulness of spirit, as, *Take heed, hem*, or the like.

When your whelp is brought up to understand these several words, *viz.* of instruction, correction, cherishing, and advice, and that he will couch and lie down at your feet, how, when, and as long as you please, and that with a word or look only; then teach him to lead you in a line or collar, and to follow at your heels, without coming too close or hanging back; the meaning of this is, to teach him to be more familiar and obedient unto you.

Having brought him to perfect obedience, to follow you in a line, the next thing must be, to make him follow you in like manner loose, without a line, and always to be at your heels, and to lie down by you without your leave to the contrary; this is as necessary a lesson as can be taught him, for he must be so but upon special occasion, as to raise up fowl from their haunts, and find out, and bring what you have shot or killed unto you.

The next lesson to learn him is, to fetch and carry any thing that you shall command him; and this you may begin to teach him by the way of sport, as by taking your glove, and shaking over his head, making him to catch at it, and to play with it; and sometimes let him hold it in his mouth; and strive to pull it from you; then cast it a little way from you, and let him muzzle it on the ground; then take it from him gently, giving him cherishing, as, *That's a good boy, Well done*, or the like.

After

After you have spent some time in this, and that you find him to take it from the ground, and to hold it in his mouth, as it were from you; then begin to cast it further and further, giving him your command, saying, Fetch, or bring it, firrah; and if he brings it, then cherish and reward him with meat, or a crust of bread, and let him have no food, but what he deserves by doing his lesson, and by your continual practice he will fetch your glove, or any thing else you throw out for him.

If at any time he offers to run away with your glove, or tofs it up and down wantonly, not bringing it to you orderly, then first give him your word of instruction.

And if that will not do, your word of correction; and if neither avail, then proceed to blows, and give him nothing to eat as a reward, until he doth as you command.

When by this means you have made him perfect, and that he will fetch a glove readily wherever you throw it, bringing it to you, altho' in company, and all call him to come to them; you must then make much of him, and reward him very well. And having trained him to fetch your glove, then proceed to teach him to fetch whatsoever you throw from you, as staves, sticks, stones, money, or any thing that is portable.

As also teach him to carry live or dead fowl, and with a tender mouth, that when you have occasion to use him for the sport, he may bring them to you without tearing, or so much as bruising a feather.

As you walk with him in the fields, drop something behind you unknown to him; and being gone a little way, send him back to seek it, by saying, Back, firrah, I have lost; and if at first he stand amazed, urge him still, and cease not by pointing to him the way you would have him go, until by seeking

seeking out he finds that which you so dropped; which make him take up, by saying, That's it, and to bring it after you; then drop it again, going twice as far as formerly, causing him to go back to seek it, not leaving him till you have made him find it, and bring it to you, for which cherish and reward him; and where he fails, there chastise or chide him, sometimes with angry words, other times with blows, and sometimes keep him fasting, according to his offence; and thus do until he will hunt the way back which you went, were it above a mile.

But if your dog happens to bring you a wrong thing, you must receive it from him, and cherish him; but send him back presently again, saying, Away again, or, I have lost more, and be not satisfied until he hath brought you the right thing; and if he return without any thing, then be sure both to chide and beat him for his sloth and negligence.

When he will thus fetch, carry, and find out things thus lost, then train him to hunting, beginning first with tame fowl, which by your help (when they dive, or otherwise) you may with little labour make him take, which will hearten and encourage him to the sport.

After this make him use all his cunning without your assistance, whether he gets or loses the game, and according to his desert, reward or correct him. By this practice he will become master of his game; and be sure always, that he brings his game (when taken) to the shore unto you without hurting it.

Your next business shall be, to train him unto your fowling-piece, causing him to follow, as it were, step by step behind you, and under the covert of your shadow until you have shot, or else couch, or lie close, where you appoint him, by saying, Lie close, until you have shot, and then upon the least notice,

notice or beckoning, speedily to come and do what you command.

Some are so expert, as to have their eyes upon the game, and upon the gun's going off immediately run to fetch it; but 'tis adjudged not so good, for the place should not be a warning to him, but your command; but if you give him his liberty at your shooting, when you come against your nets or lime twigs, as soon as he seeth the fowl entangled, and flutter their wings, he will presently rush in amongst them, and will occasion the spoiling your lime rods, and the tearing or entangling your nets.

The spaniel is of great use in the moulting time, that is, when the wild fowl cast their feathers, and can't fly, but lie lurking about in secret places; which season is between summer and autumn: at which time take your dog into such places where they resort, causing him to hunt about; and when he finds them, they are easily taken, because they can't fly.

In fenny countries, where fowl do much resort, great quantities may be taken, driving them into places where you must have nets ready fixed, as in narrow creeks, or the like.

These fowl, if taken and kept tame, and fed with beasts livers, whey, curds, barley, paste, scalded bran, and the like, are excellent food, far surpassing those absolutely wild, both in plumpness, fatness of body, and also for sweetness of taste.

Of LURCHERS.

Lurchers are a kind of hunting dogs much like a mongrel greyhound, with pricked ears, and shagged coat, and generally of a yellowish white colour: they are very swift runners, so that if they get between the burrows and the conies, they seldom miss; and this is their common practice in hunting; yet they use other subtilties, as the *tumbler* does, some of them bring-

bringing in their game, and those are the best. It is also observable that a *lurcher* will run down a hare at a stretch.

The Tumbler.

So called because in hunting they turn and tumble, winding their bodies about circularly, and then fiercely and violently venturing on the beast, do suddenly gripe at the very entrance or mouth of their holes and receptacles, before they can make any recovery of self security.

This dog useth also another craft and subtilty; namely, when he runneth into a warren, or fetcheth a course about a coney-burrow, he hunts not after them, nor does any way affright them; he shews no spite against them, but dissembling friendship, and pretending favour, passes by with quietness and silence, marking their holes diligently, wherein he is seldom deceived.

When he comes to a place where there is a certainty of conies, he coucheth down close with his belly to the ground, provided always that by his skill and policy, that the wind be against him in that enterprize, and the conies discover him not where he lurketh, by which means he gets the scent of the conies, which is carried to him by the wind and air, either going to their holes or coming out, either passing this way, or running that way, and by his circumspection so orders his matters, that the silly coney is debarred quite from his hole (which is the haven of his hope, and harbour of his safety) and fraudulently circumvented and taken, before he can reach his hole.

Thus having caught his prey, he immediately carries it to his master, who waits for the return of his dog in some convenient lurking place.

These dogs are somewhat lesser than the hounds, being lanker, leaner, and somewhat prick-eared.

By

By the form and fashion of their bodies, they might be called mungrel greyhounds, if they were somewhat bigger.

But though they do not equal the greyhound in size, yet they will, in the compass of one day, kill as many conies as shall be a sufficient load for a horse; for craft and subtilty are the instruments whereby they make this spoil.

A SETTING-DOG.

A dog trained up to the setting of partridges, &c. from a whelp, till he comes to perfection; you must pitch upon one that has a perfect and good scent, and is naturally addicted to the hunting of fowl, and this dog may be either a *land-spaniel*, *water-spaniel*, or a *mungrel* between both, or indeed the *shallow-flew'd*, *hound*, *tumbler*, *lurcher*, or *small bastard-mastiff*, but none is better than the *land-spaniel*; he should be of a good nimble size, rather small than thick, and of a courageous mettle, which, though not to be discerned being very young, yet you may very well know it from a right breed, which have been known to be strong, lusty, and nimble rangers, of active feet, wanton tails, and busy nostrils.

Having made choice of a dog, begin to instruct him at four months old or six at the farthest, and the first thing you should do, is to make him loving to, and familiar with you; the better to effect this, let him receive his food, as much as can be, from no other hand but your own, and correct him rather with words than blows. When he is so far trained as that he will follow none but yourself, and can distinguish your frowns from your smiles, and smooth words from rough, teach him to couch and lie close to the ground first by laying him often on the ground and crying *lie close*, and then rewarding or chastizing him, according as he deserves; in the next place teach

teach him to come creeping to you, and if he offers to raise his body or head, you must not only thrust the rising part down, but threaten him with an angry voice, which if he seems to slight, give him a small jerk or two with a whipcord lash, and often renew his lesson, till he becomes very perfect in them.

Then teach him to lead in a string or line, and to follow you close at your heels, without trouble or straining his collar; after he has learned these things, take him into the fields, and give him his liberty to range, but still in obedience to your command, and if he commits a fault, give him due correction.

As soon as you see him come upon the haunt of any partridge (which may be known by his greater eagerness in hunting, as also by a kind of whimpering and whining voice, being very desirous to open, but not daring) you ought then to speak to him, bidding him to take heed, or the like; but yet, if he either rush in or spring the partridge, or open, and so the partridge escapes, then he ought to be severely corrected, and cast him off again, and let him hunt in some place where you know a covey lies, and see whether he has mended his fault; and if you catch any with your nets, give him the heads, necks and pinions for his encouragement.

Of GREYHOUNDS.

The best sort of them has a long body, strong and pretty large, a neat sharp head, sparkling eyes, a long mouth and sharp teeth; little ears with thin gristles, a strait, broad and strong breast, his fore legs strait and short, his hind legs long and strait, broad shoulders, round ribs, fleshy buttocks, but not fat, a long tail, and strong and full sinews.

Of this kind, those are always fittest to be chosen among the whelps that weigh lightest, for they will be sooner at the game, and so hang upon it, hindering it.

it's swiftness, till the heavier and strong hounds come to offer their assistance; and therefore, besides what has been already said,

'Tis requisite for a greyhound to have large sides, and a broad midriff, so that he may take his breath in and out more easily; his belly should also be small, (which otherwise would obstruct the swiftness of his course) his legs long, and his hairs thin and soft; the Huntsman is to lead these hounds on his left hand, if he is on foot, and on the right if on horseback.

The best time to try to train and lead them to their game, is at twelve months old, tho' some begin sooner with them; with the males at ten months, and the females at eight months old, which last are generally more swift than the dogs; they must also be kept in a slip while abroad, till they can see their course; neither should you run a young dog till the game has been on foot a considerable time, lest being over greedy of the prey he strains his limbs too much.

It is a received opinion, that a *greyhound* bitch will in common beat a *greyhound* dog, by reason that she excels him in nimbleness; but if it be considered that the dog is longer and stronger, that opinion will seem to be a vulgar error.

Here you may take notice as to the breeding of *greyhounds*, that the best dog upon an indifferent bitch, will not get so good a whelp as an indifferent dog upon a good bitch.

And observe this in general as to breeding; let the dogs and bitches, as near as you can, be of an equal age not exceeding four years old; however, to breed with a young dog and an old bitch, may be the means of producing excellent whelps, the goodness of which you may know by their shapes, in the following manner

In the breeding of *greyhounds*, in the first place.

The

The dieting of GREYHOUNDS consists in these four things, food, exercise, airing, and kenneling.

The general food of a *greyhound* ought to be chippings, crusts of bread, soft bones and gristles, the chippings scalded in beef, mutton, veal or venison broth: and when it is indifferent cool, then make your bread only float in good milk, and give it your *greyhounds* morning and evening, and this will keep them in a good state of body.

But if your dog be poor, sickly and weak, then take sheeps heads, wool and all, clean washed, and having broken them to pieces, put them into a pot; and when it boils, scum the pot, and put good store of oatmeal into it, and such herbs as pottage is usually made with; boil these till the flesh is very tender, and feed your dog with this morning and evening, and it will recover him.

If you design your *greyhound* for a wager, then give him his diet bread as follows:

Take half a peck of good wheat, and half a peck of the finest dried oatmeal, grind them together, boul't the meal, and having scattered in it an indifferent quantity of liquorice and anniseeds, well beaten together, knead it up with the whites of eggs, and bake it in small loaves indifferent hard, then soak it in beef or other broths; and having walked him and aired him half an hour after sun-rise in the morning, and half an hour before sun-setting, give him some of it to eat.

The exercise of a GREYHOUND.

He ought to be coursed three times a week, rewarding him with blood, which will animate and encourage him to prosecute his game; but forget not to give the *hare* all the just and lawful advantage, so that she may stand long before the *greyhound*, that
thereby

thereby he may shew his utmost strength and skill before he reap the benefit of his labour.

If he kill, do not suffer him to break t he hare but take her from him, and clean his chaps from the wool of the hare; give him the liver and lights, and then take him up in your leash, lead him home, and wash his feet with some butter and beer, and put him into the kennel, and half an hour afterwards feed him.

Upon the coursing days, give your hound a toast and butter or oil, in the morning, and nothing else, and then kennel him till he go to the course.

The kennelling *greyhounds* after this manner breeds in them lust, spirit and nimbleness, it also prevents several dangerous casualties, and keeps the pores close, so as not to spend till time of necessity; therefore suffer not your hound to go out of the kennel but at the hours of feeding, walking, coursing, or other necessary business.

Of TERRIERS.

A *Terrier* is a kind of hound, used chiefly for hunting the fox or badger; so called, because he creeps in to the ground, as the ferrets do into the coney-burrows, and there nips and bites the fox and badger, either tearing them in pieces with his teeth, or else hauling and pulling them by force out of their lurking holes; or at least driving them out of their hollow harbours, to be taken by a net or otherwise.

The huntsmen have commonly a couple of terriers, to the end they may put in a fresh one, as occasion serves, to relieve the other.

The time proper for entering these terriers is, when they are near a year old; for if it be not done within that time, they will hardly after be brought to take the earth, and this entering and flushing of them may be performed several ways.

When foxes and badgers have young cubs, taken your old terriers, and enter them in the ground; and when they begin to bay, you must hold every one of your terriers at a particular hole or mouth of the earth, that they may listen, and hear the old ones bay.

After you have taken the old fox or badger, so that nothing remain within but the young cubs, couple all your old terriers, and put the young ones in their stead; encouraging them by crying *to him, to him*.

And if they take any young cub within the ground, let them alone to do what they will with him; and do not forget to give the old terriers their reward; which is blood and livers fried with cheese, and some of their grease, shewing the heads and skins to encourage them.

Another way is, to take an old fox or badger, and to cut his nether jaw away, leaving the upper to shew the fury of the beast, tho' he can do no harm with it, or else break out all his teeth; then dig an earth in some convenient place in the ground, making it wide enough, that your terriers may the better turn therein, and have room enough for two to enter.

Cover the hole with boards and turf, first putting the fox or badger in, and then your terriers, both young and old, which when they have bayed sufficiently, begin to dig with spades and mattocks, to encourage, them against such times as you are to dig over them; afterwards, take out the fox or badger, with the chumps or pinchers, killing it before them; or let a greyhound kill it in their sight.

Of ANGLING.

Of FISHING-RODS and TACKLE.

AS for your tops, hazle or yew switches gathered about the middle of *December*, when most free from sap, are accounted very good, though the two following, or preceding months, may reasonably serve, run them over a gentle heat, to make them tough; let the stock and tops be taper, smooth and strait, the pieces of each rod suitable in an exact symmetry, free from knots, or else they will be deficient in casting, and never strike well, nor be truly pliable, but at a knot be apt to break and spoil your sport. To keep them in good order, bind them close to a strait pole, and so let them continue long, that they may not warp; fasten a loop of silk or horse hair at the end of it with shoemakers thread, that the line may have play on it; and though many use silk lines, yet I prefer the horse hair as the best; and in twisting or braiding, observe an exact evenness, for one hair being shorter than the rest in a link, the whole stress will lie on that, and in breaking, renders the rest much the weaker, and often a good fish is lost for want of this observance; make your knots sure, that they slip not: as for the colour of the hair, it being free from nits or goutiness, which some call botches, the pale, waterish colour, is the best to deceive in a clear stream, but in wheyish or muddy water, you may chuse indifferently a line; for the ground angle need not be so strong as that you intend for your rod at the artificial fly, abating in the latter a hair from top to bottom, in every link from one or two, to six or eight, or more.

As for the hook, it must be long in the shank, and of a compass somewhat inclining to roundness; for if the shank be strait the point will stand out-

ward; fasten the hair on the inside of the shank, to preserve it from fretting, whether you angle at top or bottom; proportion your hook for strength and compass, to the number of hairs you angle with next it, neither use great hooks to small baits, nor great baits with little hooks; *barbel*, *chub* must have large hooks; *carp*, *eels*, *tench*, *pearch*, *breams*, those of much lesser size; and experience teaches, *trouts* in clear water, *graylings*, *smelts*, *roaches*, *salmon-smelts*, *dace*, *ruff* and *gudgeons*, are soonest taken with small hooks for though many use great ones for the *trout*, especially in muddy water, yet the *salmon* must be angled for with a hook according to his strength; hooks for *dub-flies* should be generally small, and so for *cod-baits*, but larger for worms, yet such as some use for the latter, do not generally take in clear water: when you whip your hook, which is stiled arming, do it with silk lightly rubbed with shoemaker's wax, twisting it round on the lower part of the line, almost to the bent of the hook on the inside, having first smoothed the shank of the hook with a whetstone; and for worms let it be red-coloured silk, but for *cod bait*, *pastes*, &c. white.

Floats should be of cork for river fishing, but for ponds, meers, and other standing water, quill and pens will do very well, and in very slow rivers, especially when you are to angle near the top with tender baits or pastes: as for your cork, let it be the finest, free from holes and flaws; bore it through with a small hot iron, thrust in a quill sizeable, shap'd with a knife to the likeness of a pyramid, egg, or pear, a proportionable bigness, and with a pumice-stone finely smooth it; run your line through the quill, and wedge it in with the uppermost hard part of the quill, the smaller end of the cork being towards the hook, and the bigger towards the rod; let the cork be so poised with lead on the line, that the
quill

quill standing directly upright, the least bite or nibble may sink the cork.

To lead your line, do it with a shot cloven, and then closed exactly on it; but not above two of these on any line, and that an inch and a half, or two inches distant from each other, and the lowermost plumb seven or eight from the hook; but for a running line, either in clear or muddy water, nine or ten inches; and if you find a sandy bottom in a river, it being full of wood, with few stones, shape your lead a diamond-fashion, or to that of a barley-corn or oval; bring the ends very close and smooth to the line, yet make it black, for the brightness will scare the fish.

It is very necessary to have a landing net or hook, or you may lose many large fish, by breaking line or hold, before you can land him. The net you may fasten to the end of a long manageable pole; as for the hook, it must be a large one with a screw, to screw into a socket at the end of a pole: and when your fish is entangled, clap it into the mouth of it, and draw it to land; but this latter is chiefly for *barbel*, *salmon*, and other strong fish.

As for your pannier, let it be of light osier twigs, neatly woven and worked up; and to be the more compleatly prepared on all occasions, have in readiness divers sorts of hooks, lines, links ready twisted, hair, and silk of several colours, small strong thread, lead plummets, shoemaker's wax, and floats of divers sizes, line cases, whet-stone, pen-knife, worm-bags, boxes, baits, scissars. And thus having pretty well accoutred my angler with tackle, it will be next necessary to know what baits he must use, for on that mainly depends success or frustration.

Baits bred on trees, herbs, plants, worms; their season, and what fish take them; when and how, &c.

There are different sorts of baits.

1. The garden-worm, lob-worm, or treachet and dew-worm, are one and the same, though in divers places their names thus alter; and this worm, one of the greatest size, is an excellent bait for *chevin, salmon, barbel, or eel*, though the small of the same kind are not much affected with them: that with a broad tail, a red head, and a streak down the back, is the best: they are found in the latter end of the summer, in the evening, in gardens and church-yards, and may be driven out of the earth with the juice of walnut-tree leaves and water, poured on their holes.

2. Marsh or meadow-worms are found in marshy grounds, or in banks of rivers in fertile mould, being tough and lively, and is a very good bait, especially in *March, April, and September*, for *pearl, flounder, bream, smelt, gudgeon, salmon, trout, grayling*; though many, and not without success, use from *Candlemas* to *Michaelmas*, and in moss and water it may be kept fifteen days before use.

3. Brandlings, red-worms, and gilt tails, are found in old dunghills, rotten earth, cow's dung, hog's dung, or tanner's bark, when it is used and cast by. The brandling and gilt tail are especially good for taking *pearl, tench, bream, salmon, gudgeon, smelt*; they are taken by *trout* and *grayling* in muddy or clear water, and the red-worms, well scour'd, are taken by *tench, pearl* and *bream*, and best in muddy water.

4. The worm called tag-tail is of a fresh colour, having at his tail a yellow tag, clear half an inch long, found in meadows, after a shower of rain, or in chalky ground, in *March* and *April*, if the weather be temperate; this is held an extraordinary good bait

bait for *trout* in cloudy weather, and a little scouring will serve it.

5. The palmer-fly, palmer-worm, wool-bed and cankers, are counted one and the same, being bred on herbs, trees, and plants, not being properly a caterpillar, yet the shape of one, being in the outward part rough and woolly, and excellent baits for the *chub*, *grayling*, *trout*, *dace* or *roach*. The palmer-fly and may-fly are held the foundation of fly-angling, and have usually good success.

6. The oak-worm, caterpillar, cabbage-worm, crabtree-worm, or jack, colwort-worm, or grub, may be long kept with the leaves of those trees or plants, that breed them in boxes, with holes for air, or in withy bark; they take *chub*, *roach*, *dace* and *trout*, the oak-worm being preferable to any who breed on trees or plants, being the best taken on the top of the water, though you may go as deep as you will with them: to get these, search the colewort or cabbage leaves, beat the oak, or crab-tree, or hawthorn; some of them are hard and tough, others smooth and soft; some horned tailed, others have them on their heads, some smooth, others hairy.

7. Bobs, of these there are two sorts, they are found in sandy or mellow ground, especially after plowing; the one is justly called the earth bob, white grub or white bait, being much bigger than a gentle, having a red head, the body soft and full of white guts, the other is lesser, and somewhat blueish, found many times in digging on heaths; they are excellent baits from *Mid-april* to the first of *November*, to take *tench*, *bream*, *trout*, *chub*, *roach*, *smelts*, *salmon*, *dace* and *carp*; they must be kept in an earthen vessel, with the earth you find them in, covered very close to keep out the cold and wind; some boil them about two minutes in milk before they use them, which makes them tougher and whiter, others dip

them in honey or gum-ivy, for *carp*, *bream*, and both ways prove successful.

8. Gentles or maggots, may be kept with flesh, and scoured well with wheat-bran; they are easy to be had, or bred by putrefaction. These are sometimes added to a worm on the hook, sometimes to a dub-fly, and so take *salmon-smelts*, but oftner used by themselves, two or three on a hook; the day before you angle, put them into a box with gum ivy, and it will prove successful to your sport; they are good baits for *tench*, *barbel*, *bream*, *bleak*, *gudgeon*, *trout*, *dace*, *chub*, *carp*.

9. Flag-worms, or dock-worms, are the same, found among flags, in old pits or ponds, viz. the small fibres of the flag-roots, by opening little husks, it is pale, yellow, or white, longer and slenderer than a gentle, and these may be kept in bran, and are good baits for *bream*, *tench*, *roach*, *carp*, *dace*, *bleak* and *perch*; when you fish with it for the *greyling* use the smallest line, and the float, and fish nine or ten inches from the ground.

10. The bark-worm or ash-grub, are all one, being very full and white, bent round from the tail to the head, the head being red, and the parts very tender, resembling a young dorr or humble-bee, and may be used all the year, but particularly from *Michaelmas* to the middle of *May* or *June*, and except the fly and cod-bait, is the best for *graylings*, *dace*, *roach* and *chub*; it is found best under the bark of an oak, ash, elder or beach; especially when fell'd and they having lain about a year, or in the hollow of these trees when standing, where doted or rotten; it is a very tender bait, and best on a bristled hook, by running the hook in at the head and up the belly, till it stays on the brittle, and no part of the hook's point appears out of it; they are kept well in wheat bran, and take the *grayling* with the smallest line; angle
with

with the float, keeping the bait seven or eight inches from the bottom; but if you fish with it for *roach*, *chub* or *dace*, using different tackle.

11. There is a bob found under a cow-turd, called the cow-turd bob, from the beginning of *May* to *Michaelmas*; some call it a clap bait; this is like a gentle, but bigger; you may keep it sometimes in moss, but the best is to keep it in earth, dug up under the place where you find it; it is very good bait for *trout*; if you angle with it on a bristled hook, on the top of the water, and in the water, it is taken by *chub*, *carp*, *bream*, *tench*, *dace* and *roach*.

12. The cod-bait, cad-bait, cadisworm, or case-worm, are one and the same bait, though of three sorts. The one is found under stones that lie loose and hollow in small brooks, shallow rivers, or very fine gravel, in a case or husk, and when fit for purpose, they are yellow; they are bigger than a gentle, having a black or blueish head. Another sort is found in pits, ponds, slow running rivers, ditches, in cases or husks of rushes, water-weeds, straw, &c. and are by some called ruffcoats, or straw-worms; these are accounted principal baits for *bleak*, *salmon*, *smelts*, *tench*, *bream*, *chub*, *trout*, *grayling* and *dace*. The next is a green sort, found in pits, ponds, or ditches, in *March*, coming before the yellow ones, for they are not in season till the end of *April*, and in *July* are out of season: the third sort is proper in *August*, being smaller than the other. These must be kept tender in woollen bags when you carry them for use, but to keep them long alive, in a green withy bark, taken off and hollowed like a trunk, lay it in the dew to moisten it.

Natural flies for baits, their seasons, and where to be found, for what fish they are proper, &c.

1. The ant-flies are found in their hills, about the end of *July*, *August*, and most part of *September*; with the earth you take with them, they may be kept in glass bottles; two or three of them fixed on the small hook, are certain baits for *chub*, *roach*, and *dace*, if you angle under water not above six inches from the bottom.

2. The brood of humble bees, hornets and wasps are good baits, dry them over a fire, or in an oven, so not being over done, they will last long, and sit handsomely on the hook, to take *chub*, *eels*, *breams*, *flounders*, *roach* or *dace*; some boil them, but then they will not keep long: hornets, wasps and humble bees, may be used alive, when their wings are a little grown and their legs short, especially for the *chub*, as also the black-bee breeding in clay-walls.

3. The fern-fly or fern-bob, is found among fern from *May-day* to the end of *August*, it is thick and short of body, has two pair of wings, the uppermost reddish and hard, which may be taken off: the last ten days of *May* the *trout* will take it every day, and the *chub* refuses it no part of the summer.

4. The stone-fly and green drake. The first of these is found under hollow stones at the river sides; the body of it is pretty thick, and almost as broad at the tail as in the middle; it is of a curious brown colour, streaked a little with yellow on the back, but much more on the belly, and is found by stony rivers; with this, bait for *flounders*, *dace*, *bleak*, *roach* and *perch*.

5. The great moth that has a considerable big head with whitish wings, is to be found in summer evenings in gardens, or trees and plants; it speedily takes *chub* if you dabble with it.

6. The

6. The hawthorn-fly is black, found frequently on hawthorn-trees, when the leaves are but out; the best use this can be put to, is to dib in a river for *trout*.

7. The ash-fly, woodcock-fly or oak fly, is the same, under different names, and holds good from the beginning of *May* to the end of *August*; its of a brownish colour, and usually found in the body of an oak or ash, standing with his head downwards towards the root of the tree, and is a very good bait for *trout*.

The *bonnet-fly* comes in season in *June*, is to be found amongst any standing grass, and is an excellent bait for *chub*, *dace*, &c.

These being the principal flies used in angling, I now come to mixed baits of another nature.

Miscellany of BAITs very taking and much in use.

1. *Salmon* spawn boiled, and fastened on the hook, is a very good bait for *chub*, and in some rivers for *trout*, it being advantageous to the angler, particularly in winter and spring if he keeps it salted; especially in places where *salmon* used to spawn, for thither the fish gather to expect it.

2. Grasshoppers the latter end of *June*, all *July*, and *August*, if their legs and outward wings be taken off, especially for *roach*, *trout* and *grayling*, and here you put a slender plate of lead on the shank of your hook, slenderest at the bent, then draw your grasshopper over it, after put a lesser grasshopper or cock-bait at the point, and keep it moving, lifting up and sinking again; a *chub* will also take the bait freely, and so will a *trout* if you dib with it.

3. The water-cricket, water-house or creeper, is but one, these take *trout* in *March* and *April*, and sometimes in *May*, if you angle at the river; it is to be angled with in clear water, within a foot of the

bottom, some let it drag on the ground. This creeper is bred in stony rivers, and held to turn into a stone-fly, about the middle of *May*, that fly not being any where seen before.

Lamery pride, or seaven, is a very good bait for *chub* and *eels*, night or day: this is no other than little live things like small *eels*, no thicker than a straw, and are to be found in sandy, muddy heaps, near to the shores in rivers.

Snails, the black and white, are good baits for *chub*, very early in the morning; *trout* and *eels* take them on night hooks, but the bellies of the black may be slit, so that the white may appear; some dib for *chub*, with house crickets.

For *chub*, *barbel*, *roach*, and *dace*, you may angle with cheese or oat-cake, especially at the ledger-bait: the cheese you may wrap up two or three days in a wet linen cloth, or moisten it over with honey and water.

As for a *fike*, he is a greedy devourer, and therefore mostly delights in fish, frogs, &c. therefore your baits for him must be small *dace*, *minnows*, *roach*, *salmon-smelt*, *gudgeon*, *bleak*, *millers-thumb*, also *trout* and *eels* well scour'd in wheat-bran, to take away the slime: and indeed most sort of small fish he takes; and how you are to manage them on your hook, I shall tell you when I come to treat of the taking him in the river *Thames*. Periwinkle, a kind of water-snail, is much used for *roach*, being taken whole out of its shell: *shrimps* taken out of their husk or shell may be used as a bait for *chub*, *roach*, and *dace*.

Pastes proper for the angler.

Pastes are of several kinds, though tending o one and the same end: for *chub* or *chevin*, make a paste of the fattest old cheese, the suet of mutton kidney, a little strong runnet, mix them equally and finely together,

together, then put as much powder of turmerick as will give them a fine yellow colour.

For *roach* and *dace*: grate fine bread into a little fine water, wherein gum-ivy has been foked. For the *barbel*, in *August*, make a paste of new cheese and mutton suet. For *roach* and *dace*, you may put a little butter to your crumb bait, and colour it with saffron. For *carp* or *tench* mix crumbs of bread, with honey, though for a *carp* I reckon this the surest.

Take bean-flour, or for want of it, wheat-flour, the inside of a leg of young rabbit, cat-skin, or whelp, white bees-wax and sheep's-suet proportionable; beat them in a mortar till well incorporated, then moisten the mass with clarified honey, and work it up into little balls before a gentle fire.

The *chub* in winter takes a paste made of strong Cheshire-cheese, beaten with butter and saffron till it become a lemon colour.

Stoned cherries, finely grated manchet, sheep's blood, saffron, make a good paste for *roach*, *dace*, *bleak*, *chub*, *trout*, *perch*; and for the *chub* only put a little rusty beacon in it.

Another excellent paste is made of the fattest old cheese, mutton kidney suet, strong runnet, anniseed water, wheat-flour, and the dripping of rusty beacon held against the fire.

What is to be observed in angling with paste.

1. You must proportion the quantity of your paste you put on your hook to the smallness or largeness of the fish you angle for, as in other baits.

2. You may try oils upon any of these pastes, and as you see your success, so continue the one or the other. And the best for this purpose are oil of polypody of the oak, oil of petre, oil of ivy, and as properly gum of ivy, and assafoetida.

3. To

3. To strengthen any paste, and so prevent its washing off the hook, it will not be amiss to beat a small quantity of fine flax, cut short, cotton wool or fine lint among them, which will prove very binding; those that you would have keep long, put a little white bees-wax into them, and anoint them with clarified honey, the latter you may wipe off when you see occasion.

4. Paste or tender baits must not be angled with in rapid streams, but on a small hook in pits, ponds, meers or slow running rivers: your eye in this sort of angling must be quick, your rod somewhat stiff, and a nimble hand to strike, or else the bait and fish will quickly bid you farewell. This is better done with a quill float than a cork, which sooner shews the nibble or bite: and if you then be not very quick, your labour is lost, and with these pastes success is usually had for *bream, bleak, chub, roach, dace, carp, tench, barbel.*

Oils and ointments useful in angling.

Take oil of ivy-berries, anoint the inside of an oaken box with it, and put three or four worms, or other live baits into the box, shutting it close; then keep them not there too long, lest the strength of the oil kill them, but take these out and put in more, and so they being scented with the oil, it will allure the fish more readily to take them. This may be done in the same manner, for want of oil, with gum-ivy, which is a tear that flows out of the ivy stalks, when slit or wounded by piercing.

Oil of spike and dissolved gum-ivy, are held to be much attracting, the bait being anointed with them.

Oil of *polypody* of the oak, *Venice* turpentine, and new honey is very good, if eight inches of the line next the hook be anointed with it, but then there must be

two or three hairs, for it will not well stick to a single one; however, do not clog your line with it.

Chymical oil of lavender, or for want of it, oil of spike six drops, three drachms of assafoetida, *Venice* turpentine one drachm, camphire one drachm, make these into an ointment, and anoint them as the former; this in clear water wonderfully takes *gudgeons*.

The fat of the thigh-bone of a heron, makes an ointment that rarely fails, and is esteemed by those that have tried it, the best of any, being a new experiment.

But let me commend to you above others this; take the oils of camomile, lavender, anniseed, each a quarter of an ounce, heron's grease, and the best of assafoetida, each two drachms, two scruples of cummin seed finely beaten to powder, *Venice* turpentine, camphire and galbanum of each a drachm; add two grains of civet, and make them into an unguent; this must be kept close in a glazed earthen pot, or it loses much of its virtue; anoint your line with it as before, and your expectation will be strangely answered.

Oil of asper so much noised about, and said to be extracted from a fowl called the *Osprey*, is now found to be a mixture of the oil of spike, lavender, and refined oil of turpentine, which however has a considerable effect in still or slow moving waters; and observe in this case, your line must be anointed every second drawing up, or the strength of the scent being washed off, you may expect your sport to cease.

I might now speak something of artificial flies, and other artificial baits, but not to keep the angler too long from the water, I shall have occasion elsewhere to treat of them.

Fishes Haunts proper to be known.

If you are not certain of any waters to fish in, your business is to try the most likely and promising, viz.

Where trees fallen, wood, rushes, weeds or rubbish are in rivers or likely large ponds, there are store of fish promised, for thither they resort for warmth and shelter; but it is very troublesome angling there.

The next are weirs, weir-pools, mill-streams, flood-gates, piles, posts, pillars of bridges, cataraets, and water falls, eddies, whirling-pits, the side of a stream, in the summer especially; for then they love to bask and lie shallow, unless the weather be excessive hot.

The *salmon* is found in large swift rivers that ebb and flow, gravelly and craggy. The *trout* mostly in purling brooks and rivers that are somewhat swift and have sandy bottoms. The *carp* and *tench* love still waters, or such as gently move, where weeds or roots of trees are near to shelter them on occasion. *Eels* generally covet muddy rivers, ponds or slimy sands, especially those of the larger size. The *pike*, *bream* and *chub* are mostly found in sandy or clay rivers, brooks or ponds, wherein bushes, bulrushes or flags grow. The *barbel*, *roach*, *dace* and *ruff* for the most are found in sandy or gravelly deep rivers, coveting to be under the shade of trees. The *umber* is likeliest to be found in marley or clayey streams, running very swift. The *gudgeon* likes best a sandy or gravelly bottom; yet for all this, a trial of divers waters will not be amiss where you may suspect any fish are likely to breed; for experience in this art is the surest instructor.

Times proper above others to angle in, according to the water, weather, &c.

1. In the hottest months take your opportunity when it is cloudy, and the water is moved by gentle gales.

2. When the floods have carried away the filth, sudden showers incumber the waters too, and the rivers, &c. retain their usual bounds, looking of palish colour.

3. When a violent shower has mudded or troubled the water, and after that the stream runs swift, for then they usually seek for creeks and shelter, and in the little rivulet running into the great one.

4. If you fish for *carp* or *tench*, do it early in the morning, viz. a little before sun-rise, till eight, and from four in the afternoon till sun-set, when the days are of a convenient length, *June*, *July*, and *August*, but in *March*, the beginning of *April*, and the end of *September*, they refuse not to bite in the warmth of the day, the wind being still.

5. If you angle for the *salmon*, the best time is from three in the afternoon till sun-set, and in the morning as before: his proper months are *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*. The *barbel* bites best in *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *August*, from five to eleven in the morning. The *pearch* and *ruff* all day in very cool and cloudy weather. The *bream* bites from sun-rise till nine or ten in the morning, in muddy water, especially when the wind blows hard, for the most part keeping in the middle of the river or pond in *May*, *June*, *July* or *August*.

6. The *pike* bites in *July*, *August*, *September*, and *October*, about three in the afternoon, in gentle water and a clear gale. In *Winter* he bites all the day long, and in *April*, *May* and the beginning of *June*, early in the morning and late in the evening. As
for

for *roach* and *dace*, they bite all the day long, if the weather be not in the extremities of heat or cold, on the top of the water. The *gudgeon* bites best in *April*, and till he has spawned in *May*, and if the weather be cool, till wasp-time, and at the end of the year, all day long in a gentle stream; observe when you angle for him, to stir and rake the ground, and he will bite the better. As for the *flounder*, though he is found only in ebbing and flowing rivers, that have communication with the sea, he bites freely all day in *April*, *May*, *June* and *July*, in a swift stream; he will bite in the still, but not near so speedy.

Ground baits to gather and feed the fish, that you may better and readily know where to find them, &c.

The ground-baits, or for baiting the ground, are barley or wheat soft boiled, which, for prevention of scattering, you may mix with some pleasant fresh earth, ale-grains, wheat bran steep'd in sheep's blood, clotted, dried and cut in small pieces, periwinkles bruised in their shells, black and white snails, worms cut in sunder and made up in little balls of earth. The guts of fowl, the small guts or livers cut small, old cheese and oat-cakes bruised together, malt grossly ground, these especially gather *tench*, *dace*, *carp*, *chub*, *roach*, *bream* and *barbel*; and the more you feed them, they will be the surer to keep to that place, and be the fatter to reward your pains when taken; and these throw in a little above the place you angle at, if it be a moving water, for before the ground, the stream will carry them some distance from the place you throw at.

When you angle in clear water keep out of sight as much as may be, sheltered behind some bush or tree, or by standing as far off as possible, keep your eye only on the surface of the water, where your float

is,

is, and to effect this the better, your rod must be proportionable in length, to answer the place you fish at, and especially at the ground, and a long rod and line at artificial flies are very necessary. An angler must add silence to his patience, and move his body as little as possible may be, for the fish are very quick-sighted, and naturally fearful, particularly the *chub*, *carp*, and *trout*.

When in a clear water you angle at the ground, or with a natural fly dibble, always do it going up the river: but in muddy water, or when you do it with a dib fly, use the contrary; if you have hooked a fish, and suspect the strength of your line or rod, let him play and tire within the water, before you offer to bring him near the top; be sure to keep the rod bent, lest running to the end of the line, he breaks his hold, or the hook; and if he be tired, and has in a manner done fluttering, bring him towards the top; and if there be occasion, use your landing net or hook; and take this for a general rule in hooking all strong fish.

*How to take the salmon and salmon-smelt by angling,
&c.*

The *salmon*, though not found in many rivers in *England*, is of principal note for river fish, though it as well belongs to the sea. They spawn in *September*, and come in season the beginning of *March*.

His best biting is at nine in the forenoon, and three in the afternoon, in clear water, especially when the wind blows against the stream, but not very roughly; then take the baits directed, and the strongest tackle, for when he is struck, he plunges and leaps, though not usually does he endeavour to go to the end of the line;

The

The younger sort of these are so tender mouthed, that unless you fasten two hooks almost in a quarter of a circle asunder, they usually break hold. For the great *salmon*, the principal bait is well scoured dew worms; for the *salmon-smelt*, the brandling, gilt-tail, meadow-worm, &c. and for flies he taketh them natural or artificial; and if you use these, a cod-bait or gentle at the top of the hook is effectual; this with the dub-fly takes *salmon-smelts*, beyond expectation; but for a greater *salmon*, if your fly be artificial, make it very large, with six wings, one behind another, that by that and the different colours, he may suppose it, as indeed it will appear in the water, a cluster of flies. He is taken at the ground with a running line or float, and sometimes he bites lower than mid-water at ground-baits, clap-baits, and the larger sort sometimes take the minnow and loach, and for these you may angle with a wire-ring on the top of the rod, letting the line run thro' it to a great length; and when he is hooked, and is spent with plunging, fix your land hook in his mouth, that is screwed to the end of a pole, as directed to land him.

Several ways to take the PIKE, and where to find his haunts, &c.

The PIKE spawns in *March*; his usual haunts are in sandy, chalky, or clayey places, somewhat near the banks: for coveting solitude, he often lurks in holes, to surprize other fish, as they fearlessly swim by; sometimes he shelters among bulrushes, water-docks, weeds, or bushes; and then he baits about the middle of the river or pond, at mid-water, and for him you must keep your bait in a gentle motion, and at all times to be above a foot from the ground; he rarely bites in the night, for then he is
for.

for the most part gone to rest in his retirement. In *April, May, June*, and the beginning of *July*, he does it most freely morning and evening in clear water, and a gentle gale in still water, or a moderate moving one; and in the rest of *July, August, September*, and *October*, his best biting time is about three in the afternoon in water as before: in winter months, if the weather be pleasing, and the water clear, he will not refuse to bite at any time, though the most certain time is about three of the clock in the afternoon, particularly in a gloomy, cloudy day; but if the water be muddied with rain, there is no certainty of him: his beloved baits are, *gudgeon, roach, dace, minnows, salmon-smelts*, no bigger than *gudgeons*, a piece of an *eel*, a young *trout*, &c. but all his baits must be very fresh, and a live one tempts him much the sooner, which may be put on by drawing the line between the skin and the ribs of the fish, and so on the hook, fastening it in the gills, and this you may use in trowling: but here have your tackle very strong, with wire about a foot from your hook, the next to it silk, and the rest of the line strong spun flax; come as little as you can near the weeds, lest they spoil your bait before the *pike* come at it, fasten the tail of the bait to the joint of the wire, and having fixed your tackle, that the line may run and play, let so much lead be at the hook as may carry the fish's head downwards, as if after playing on the top, she was going to the bottom, and when you have sunk it so, that it is at a convenient depth for the *pike*, slack your line, and give it scope that he may run to his hold, and there pouch to swallow it, which you may know by the moving of the line in the water, then with a smart jerk hook him; some use no rod with this, but lead and float, holding of the line in their hands on links; and indeed there are several methods taken, tho

tho' all to the same purpose ; wherefore for brevity's sake I omit them.

Angling for him at the snap, is to give him leave to run a little, and then strike, which must be done the contrary way to that which he moves, therefore a double spring hook is useful in this way of angling especially, for a great *pike* usually will hold the bait so fast in his teeth, that you may fail to pull it out of his mouth, and likewise strike him, when if he holds the spring hook ever so fast, the wire will draw through the bait, and so the spring opening, you will frequently hook him on the outside of his mouth. Though trowling is surer than this, and more practicable, yet this is best used in *March*, when the *pike* bites ill, then upon spawning they are sick, and lose their stomachs ; bait this as the former, and he may be taken this way when he is so.

Other brief rules for PIKE angling.

1. When the *pike* has taken your bait, observe how he moves ; if slowly, give him time, and you will rarely miss him ; let not your bait fall in one and the same place above once or twice, for if he take it not, then he is farther off.

2. If you find, after he has taken the bait, he lies still as sometimes he will, move your hand gently, to give notice which way his head lies, lest in striking you happen to pull the bait out of his mouth, if that cannot be discerned, strike directly upward : at the snap have strong tackle, and give two lusty jerks, one after another, fastening a swivel at the end of your line, which must be used at trowl and snap, and your armed wire must be hooked on it.

3. For the snap, have a hollow piece of lead, that it may pass over the wire and end of the hook, which you draw within the fish's gills or mouth, that, as directed, it may keep the head downward,
and

and at either of these baitings, if you cut away one of the fins of the bait close at the gills, also behind the vent, and one on the contrary side, it will play the better and seem more lively.

4. Be sure to raise your hand in casting when the bait is about to fall into the water, so by dashing it may not fright him away, and when it is sunk a little, draw it near the top towards you a little, and so let it fall again; and if your wire hook is joined with a steel ring, the bait will play better, and sink more direct: for snap, *March* is the chief month; *February, April, May, September* and *October* for the trowl; and though a large bait invites him most, yet a lesser takes him most surely.

To snare a *pike*; when you perceive him rise, and staying near the surface of the water, fasten about a yard and a half of strong packthread to a pole, and at the end of it a running noose of small wire, softly putting it over his head, with a quick jirk throw him to land; this is often done to young *pikes*, but the older are more wary tho' sometimes caught by this means, especially in ponds, as also when they come out of rivers and go a frogging in ditches in *March, April* and *May*.

To find and angle for PEARCH.

The *pearch* spawns the beginning of *March*, and delight in a good stream of a moderate depth, abiding usually close by a hollow bank, pebbly, gravelly bottomed, with green weeds growing in it; being commonly a river fish: he bites little in winter, but in the middle of the day, yet in summer all day, if the weather be cool and cloudy, and the water shaken with the wind; but more freely from seven till ten in the morning, and from two in the afternoon till six, and sometimes till sun-set; if in the middle of summer, you must look to him when he is struck, for

for he is a very strong fish and will struggle hard and long; they generally go many together; and if there be a great many in a hole, if you light right on them, you may at one standing catch the greater part if you give them time to bite: but if you are too hasty in striking, you may chance to miss your aim; he takes almost all manner of worms; as dew-worms, red-worms, meadow-worms, cod-bait, also the minnow, loach, small frogs, wasps, hornets, and humble-bees. ✕

He is best taken with a float, resting the bait about six inches from the ground, and sometimes he is taken about mid-water: some use a ledger bait on the ground, but the first depth has usually the best success.

To angle for the CARP, &c.

This fish has always been in great esteem, making many industrious to find ways to take him. He delights in sandy or muddy bottoms, in still deep water, by the sides of a pond or river, though in a good pond he thrives best. He is very wary and hard to be caught. His first spawning time is about *May-day*, breeding three times a year, and wonderfully encreases if he likes the water he is in; he lives long, though most disagree as to the particular number of years; and indeed I see no reason how they should be exactly known.

He bites very early in *April, May, June, July, and August*, and sometimes all night if the weather be hot and star-light. In the still deep water, if you angle in the day-time, keep out of sight as much as may be, therefore provide a long rod. He is very strong and must play when struck, or he'll carry off your hook by breaking the line or rod.

Use always the float and quill, angle for him sometimes above and sometimes below mid-water, as the weather

✕ Bait with a piece of the gill

weather is, though in mid-water he is the certainliest taken, especially in a pond, but in rivers he is very shy: lay a ground-bait for him with ground malt.

The baits you use on your hook must be gentles, two or three on the hook; he takes likewise bobs, wasps, sweet pastes, marsh-worms, flag-worms, gelt-tails, dew-worms, the cod bait and bread grain boiled soft; and in *June* and *July*, in the heat of the day, he shews himself on the top of the water, and oftenest among the weeds, when you may take him with a well scoured lob-worm, angling as with a natural fly; but in this case keep out of sight as much as you possibly can.

Observations on the TENCH, and the best way to angle for him.

The *tench* spawns the beginning of *July*, is reckoned a very good fish, much coveted, yet delights in muddy or foul water, and among weed; the ponds that are suitable for *carp* please him better than the rivers, and in pits he thrives better than in either, if they be agreeable to time, tho' in some pits they will not (notwithstanding they breed) come to any bigness; and in others they will not breed at all, but they will thrive wonderfully, beyond expectation: this I believe may happen where the storer is not skilful to distinguish males from females, but by an unlucky guess puts in all of one sort. Though he covets mud, yet his fins are very large; and to know him from others, there are two little barbs at the angles or corners of his mouth; his scales are small and smooth, and about his eyes are circles of a golden colour. They bite best from day-light to eight in the morning, and from four in the afternoon till sun-set; but in the hot months, if the weather be not tempestuous, they many times bite all night.

The best season is from the beginning of *May* to the end of *September*.

He takes the *cod-bait*, *marsh-worm*, *gentle*, *flag-worm*, or *red-worm* well scoured; and to make it take better, you may dip your bait in a little tar-water just before you use it, though the plain bait many times pleases him well. For want of the former baits, you may use pastes sweetened with honey.

Angle for him with a float of quill, letting the bait into the water two foot, sometimes more or less, but no great matter.

The BREAM's haunt, and how to angle for him.

The *bream* spawns in the beginning of *July*, is a large bony fish, is found in rivers and ponds, but in the latter, if convenient, he delights most: he is long growing, and will be very fat, and is almost as great a breeder as the *carp*.

Breams swim divers together in a gentle stream, loving a sandy, or clayish bottom, and the deepest and broadest part of the water. Your best time in the season is to angle for him from sun-rise to eight o'clock, in a moderate stream, the water being a little slimy or muddy, especially when a good breeze troubles the water, and in windy weather, if in a pond, he generally keeps the middle, and there you are most likely to find him. In the afternoon, your time is from three or four till sun-set; but in a darkish windy day he bites at any time.

He is angled for with much success from the beginning of *April* till *Michaelmas*, and may be taken at other times, except the very cold months.

He takes as baits, *flag-worms*, *gentles*, *grasshoppers*, their legs being off, *red-worms*, *gilt-tails* and *meadow-worms*, well scoured, *bobs* and *under water-flies*, especially the green ones; when he bites he runs off with the bait to the farther shore, or as far that way
as

as he can, and therefore you must give him play, for though he seems a fish made strong enough, he will not much struggle, but after two or three turns he falls on one side and may be easily landed.

Here you must angle with a float, so that the bait may touch the ground; you may make a ground bait for bream with malt, and it will draw them together.

The BARBEL, how to find and take him by Angling.

The *barbel* spawns in *April*, sometimes in *May*, is a very strong fish, and takes his name from the barbs that hang at his mouth, is curiously shaped with small scales. In the hot months you will find him in the swift strong stream, though he shuns the currents, and delights somewhat more out of the rapidity, under shades of trees and weeds, where they rout in the sands like a hog, and so nest; some suppose him to eat much gravel and sand, but I rather fancy he seeks for insects or other food that heat and moisture produce in the bottom of shallows, yet sometimes he is found in the deep and swift waters, especially at weirs bridges or flood-gates, where he shelters among piles, or in hollow places, holding by the moss or weeds, to prevent his being carried away by the stream; when winter is coming on, he retires to the still deep.

His best biting time is early in the morning, that is, from the sun-rising till ten, and from four till the sun sets, and often later, and this principally happens from the 20th of *May* to the latter end of *August*: you must be wary in taking him, for he is very subtle, and struggles long, unless well managed; many are found together frequently, but in *April* they are little worth, for then is the spawning time.

As for the baits you intend to take him with, care must be taken that they are very sweet, such as give him not distaste; angle for him with a running-line, and a bullet at the end. He takes gentles, not over-scoured, dew-worms, new cheese, paste, the young brood of wasps and hornets; and so cunning he is, that you will be cheated of many a bait in angling for him, if you have not a watchful eye, and a quick hand; for he will nibble and suck it off, and ten to one, when your float sinks, and you attempt to strike, whether he has the hook in his mouth, yet often, if you strike the contrary way his head lies, you may take him by the nose, and give him play till tired, or else, if he be any thing large, unless your tackle be very strong, part of it goes with him. He is not an over pleasant fish to eat by reason he is somewhat dry, and very full of bones. Some say he is easy of coction, his eggs and spawn vomit and purge violently.

The TROUT's haunts; the best time to angle for him, and his baits.

The *trout* spawns in *October*. His usual haunts are in small purling brooks or swift gliding rivers, not too great. Observe whether their bottoms are pebble, gravel or smooth stones; for on the sides of these he usually has his residence, though he is often found in the deep, especially a large one, also behind banks, blocks, stones, at turnings or points, where the stream much beats or makes a kind of whirling; he loves coverture and shade, from whence he may most easily seize his prey: but his hold or hole is usually in deep places; he is seldom found among weeds, rather among boughs of trees that hang in the water, or shady bushes: he plies in spring at the tail of the stream, but, as many other fish do, about the middle of *May*, at the upper end, staying long in a place, if his

his hold be near it. In the hot weather he leaves the deep and goeth into the sharp streams among gravel, unless by the excessive heat of the weather drought ensues, and then the still deep delights him.

This *trout* may be taken by dibbing, or if the weather be dark, cloudy and windy, you may take him with the cast-fly. He is in season from *March* until *Michaelmas*, but chiefly about the end of *May*, when he is in the best season; his body is adorned with red spots. The female is counted better than the male. They much affect to be near the source or spring of rivers, and where they run on lime stones, there the best of *trouts* are found.

Angle for him at the ground with a running line, with two or three small pellets of lead, omitting the float, or you may take him by float angling at the ground, if you are dextrous at angling with a single hair, two links from your hook; he is much sooner taken than with two or three hairs, though you must be cautious he break not the line; and this is better done at the bottom than top because there he has not so much force to shoot and spring, as on the top, and a single hair next the hook, if well chosen and strong, will take one of thirteen inches, if there be water room free from wood and weeds.

He bites best in a water that after a flood is clearing or rising, somewhat troubled, cloudy and windy weather; early in the morning is the best time from the middle of *April* to the end of *August*, from sun-rising till near eleven, and from two till sun-set; but at nine in the morning and three in the afternoon are the best times, at the ground or fly, as the water is most agreeable, in *March*, the beginning of *April*, *September*, and till the 13th of *October*, and then you must cease angling for the *trout*, to the end of *February*; after a shower has fallen in the evening, you

will find him rise at a gnat. In warm weather you may dib for him with the minow or loach.

The EEL, the haunt, bait and taking them, &c.

His haunts, in the day time, are usually under the covert of tree roots, brush-wood, planks or piles, about flood-gates, weirs or mill-dams, in hollow holes in banks; they mostly delight in foul still water, or at least such as runs very slow with oufy sand, or muddy bottoms, in pits, ponds and meers.

Bait for him with a young lamprey, dew-worms, scoured earth-worms, and very small fish, their fins cut off, guts of chickens or other fowl, cut in small lengths lean beef, the brood of wasps; the four first take them day or night, but most of the rest are proper for night-hooks.

Take him in the day by a ledger-bait, by snigling, bobing, brogling: as for brogling and snigling the best method I have known is this; get a long and strong line, your hook of a small compass baited with scoured red-worm or dew-worms, having one end of your line in your hand, place very easily the upper end of your hook in the cleft of a hazel rod of a convenient length so that it may slip out as you please, and where you fancy the *eel* to be, let the bait leisurely sink, and supposing it swallowed by giving time, leisurely draw him up by a little and a little, easy lying double, with the strength of the tail, your line is endangered. This you must practice in hot weather, the waters being low.

As for bobing, taking large earth worms out of good mould, scour them well in moss, and run a strong thread with a needle through them end-ways, as many as will lightly wrap a dozen times round your hand, make them into links, and fasten them to a strong packthread or whipcord, two yards long or more; make a knot about six or eight inches
from

from the worms, put about three quarters of a pound of plummet, made pyramidically on the cord, by the means of a hollowness or hole bored through it, let it sink to the knot, and fix the cord to a manageable pole. Angle with this in muddy or cloudy water, in the sides of the streams or deeps; when the *eel* or *eels* tug, let them be well fastened by the teeth, before you draw them up, then do it gently, 'till on the top, and then hoist them quickly to land: many by this way have been taken at a time.

Some, near *eels* haunts, sink a bottle of hay loosely bound, stuf with fowls guts and liver, cut in long shreds over night, and coming early the next morning, draw it up hastily by the rope fastened to the band, and you'll find large *eels* bedded in it for the sake of the *prey*. This may be done with a bundle of the brush-wood, out of which, upon pulling up, they cannot so easily get.

To angle, &c. for the Grayling or Umber.

Though this fish has two names given it, the former for the lesser sort, and the latter for the greater, yet both are the same species.

Their haunts are in marley clay, clear water and swift streams, the large is accounted eighteen inches, being in season all the year, but their prime is in *December*, when his gills and head are blackish, and his belly a dark grey studded with black spots. He will bite freely, but is very tender mouthed, therefore be careful he break not his hold, though he will not struggle much, as being very faint when he is hooked. Angle for him in or near the middle of the water, for he is always more apt to rise than descend, wherefore he is chiefly taken by a ground-bait, rather than a running line; use for him a float of cork, if you particularly angle for him, but for a *grayling* or *trout* the running line is best.

As for baits, he takes brandlings, gilt-tails, meadow-worms, tag-tails, the bark-worm, flag-worm, cod-bait, natural or artificial flies, particularly the camblet-fly and a fly made of purple wool, and one made of tawny camblet hair, also the earth bob and clap-bait.

The POPE or RUFF, his haunts, how to angle for him, with proper baits, &c.

The *pope* or *ruff* is one, in shape, nature and disposition, like the *pearch*, though in bigness not exceeding a large *gudgeon*, but of a more pleasing taste; he bites eagerly, and many of them are usually together, where the water runs slowly and is deep; in sandy places, fifty of them have been taken at a standing. You may bait for him with the small red-worm, gilt-tail, meadow-worm and other baits proper for the *pearch*, he biting at the same time the *pearch* does; you may ground bait with new turned up earth of a fallow, also with a clear sand, you may take him with a single hair, the link next the hook; the body of it is rough, and hath prickly and sharp fins; it has its seasons and nature, like the *pearch*, and is a very wholesome fish, eating short and tender.

There are abundance of them to be killed in *Moulsey* river in *Surry*.

Some particular Observations on GUDGEON angling.

The *gudgeon*, though not over large, is approved among other fish, as a dainty, being very wholesome food. This fish spawns twice or thrice in the year, he delights in sharp streams, with gravelly or sandy bottoms, and shews the young angler extraordinary good sport, who not being well skilled in chusing, or not well knowing how to come by other baits, may
take

take him with a small red worm on the ground, or very near it, and seldom by reason of the toughness of his mouth, he is lost when struck. In the heat of summer they make to the shallows in rivers, but when the weeds in autumn grow of a bad taste, or rot, and cold weather comes on, then they get together in deep places; and here it is properest to fish for them at the ground, or a little above it, if you fish with a float; it may be done with a running line on the ground, without a float: as for particular baits, I have already discoursed of them, and among others, those relating to the *gudgeon*.

The BLEAK or BLEY, to angle for him, &c.

This fish makes sport, tho' not much valued, not being very wholesome; it is many times destroyed by a worm that breeds in his stomach; in hot weather he bites eagerly, and you may fish for him with several hooks on one line, and if you catch three or four together on the several hooks, do not fear the breaking of your line, tying them about half a foot one above the other; he is easily taken with gentles, small red-worms, and any small flies at top water, by dibbing or whipping them.

Angle at middle water, or at the top, for he is usually in motion: there is another sort of these called the *blacksea*, better and wholesomer than this, called by some the *sea camelion*, because in the winter he seems often to change his colour. He is as good as any *carp*.

The CHUB or CHEVEN, his haunts, and to angle for him

The *chub* spawns in *March*, is large tho' timorous; is found in large rivers, having sand or clayey bottoms, delights much in streams shaded with trees, as also in holes where many of them consort together:

ther: he is in season from the middle of *May* 'till after *Christmas*; you may take him dibbing on the top of the water, but in the hot months he keeps mid-water; in the cold weather angle at the bottom with the ledger-bait.

He bites from sun-rising till eight, and from three till sun-set; the large one, when struck, is soonest tired; the less will struggle longer, and in sun-shiny weather they bite, in winter the middle of the day.

He scarcely refuses any bait, if not too large; as lampreys pride, the eel's brood, dew-worms scoured in moss and gravel, clap-baits, small nails, white and black cheese paste, the marrow of an ox or cow's back, a beetle with the legs off, and all sorts of baits bred on trees, plants and herbs, cod baits, broods of wasps, hornets and humble bees, the fat of rusty bacon, dors, grasshoppers, also a fly, and a cod-bait, and an oak-worm on the hook together, infallible takes him in the hot months. *

When he is taken, he must be eaten the same day, else will not be so good; most esteem his head the best part.

DACE or DARE and ROACH, their haunts, baits, &c. and how to angle for them.

As these delight in ponds or rivers with gravelly bottoms or sand, so they love deep clear waters, shaded with trees, either in rivers or elsewhere; the *dace* spawn about the middle of *March*, and are in season three weeks after. The flesh is soft, and sweet in taste.

You must angle for the *dace* within two inches of the bottom, and sometimes the bait may touch it if it is worms, but if with flies, at the top of the water, or within an inch.

The *roach* spawns about the middle of *May*, and is so healthful, that his soundness has created a com-

* the fat of livers; when soaked
you may easily separate it from
this hard substance—

mon saying, though it often causes some to tell lies. The best *roach*, by reason of the abundance of foil, are found in the *Thames* near *London*; angle for him about two feet in the water: in temperate weather, they bite all day long. The float angle takes them best.

Their baits are numerous as their fry, *viz.* worms bred on trees, plants, or herbs, gentles, cod-baits, grasshoppers with the legs off, flies artificial or natural, particularly the ant-fly, meadow-worms scour'd, bread-corn boiled. The *roach* in ponds is chiefly found under the water-docks, if there be any, and indeed few small come amiss to them.

The FLOUNDER or FLOOK's haunts, baits, and angling.

It is properly a salt-water fish, and is no where but in rivers that have communication with the sea; he is brought up by the tide, and losing himself into fresh streams, he after some times minds not his way back again. He loves gentle streams, gravelly and sandy bottoms, is very shy, and not easily taken: he bites all the day in *May*, *June*, *July*, and the beginning of *August*, tho' he will nibble much about the hook, and suck off the bait, if you be not wary to keep it in motion, which hinders him from seeing the hook, if he does, away he flies from it, sometimes in the shallow. He takes scour'd meadow or marsh-worms, earth-worms, gentles, the brood of wasps, gilt-tails and brandlings. He is to be angled for with the float, and your bait must touch the ground. He is of good nourishment, strengthens the stomach, causes appetite, and helps the spleen.

To take the SMELT with an angle.

As this fish generally lies at the tail of ships, or in brooks, so you fish for him at half tide, with a gentle. The first you catch cut in small pieces about the big-

ness of a gentle, bait your hook with them, and you'll find sport to admiration.

*The MINOW or PEARCH, LOACH and BULL-HEAD
or MILLERS-THUMB, LAMPREYS.*

As they are rather baits for other fish than valuable in themselves, so the first is taken with small worms, brandling, and gilt-tails; the two latter with gilt-tails, meadow-worms at the ground. *Lampreys* are taken as the *eel*, being much of that nature, therefore I avoid enlarging thereon.

Minnows feed by licking one another; the *loach* is good for women with child, and are all very nourishing.

Observations on, and rules for, natural fly-angling.

It is a nice point in angling, requiring a quick or sharp eye, and wary hand; it is termed by artists, *dibbling*, *diping*, or *dapeing*, and is performed on the surface of the water, or at most sometimes not letting the *bait* sink above two or three inches under, nor that, unless the *oak-fly* for the *chub* or *trout* has joined to it a *clap-bait* or *cod bait*.

This must ever be done in clear water, without lead or float, in the evening of a hot day, but in a hot calm day is best, and the still deep is to be preferred before the stream; though on the side of a stream when the water is clearing after great rains or floods, is very proper; and all hours you may dib with the green *drake-fly*, but if you needs must do it in the stream, use the *stone-fly*, which is proper early or late; if it be windy in the evening, take the artificial *stone-fly*, for then in the stream the fish rise best, and are the soonest taken; and if you pull off the wings, you may angle in the water with it; it will also take very much in a stream near the bottom, but you must take care to keep out of sight as much

much as possible, and keep your fly in motion, that it may appear to the fish to be alive.

In dibbing for *dace*, *roach*, or *chub*, let not your motion be swift, if you can perceive any of them coming towards it, but make two or three short removes, as if they were at rest, or the fly was swimming or playing, then let it gently glide with the stream, if possible toward the fish, but if it be slow or standing water, you must keep it moving with your hand, not just upon him, but sideways and sloping by him, lest it should escape him, it will make him mind it the more ; for only the *trout*, if it be moved swiftly, will, if any, certainly follow it.

In a calm, dibbing is not so safe as when a pretty good gale stirs the water, for then neither you nor the deceit put on the fish by an artificial fly is so easily discovered, and then few natural flies at liberty can lie on the water, but for want of choice they will snap at the first that comes in their way, biting more eagerly through hunger. If they will not rise at the top, try them a little lower, for some will be sooner taken, as the *roach* particularly, by dibbing under water than at the top. *Roach*, *dace*, and *chub*, will sometimes be pleased with an artificial fly, especially if an earth-bob, cod-bait, earth-worm, or gentle, be put on the point of a hook, or an oak-worm is very pleasing on the top, or under the water.

At dibbing and trailing, *trout* and *salmon-smelts* will take an artificial fly well, particularly the *stone-fly* and *green-drake*, early or late in the evening. If you fish for *salmon-smelt*, *roach*, *chub*, or *dace*, with the dub-fly, put on a gentle, wasp, cod-bait, or clap-bait, let it stand well on the point of your hook ; when the wind furls the waters, and few flies appear on or over it, is the best time to angle with the fly, either natural or artificial, for, having no variety or choice, they will quickly take your bait. If it be
a fun,

a sun shiny day get under the shade of trees if you can, that neither your shadow nor that of your rod may appear, and so fright them away. If you find the fish rise not towards the top, sink your fly by degrees, and try even to middle-water, for before these sort of flies are naturally in season, the fish very rarely rise at them; wherefore, to know this, that you mistake not in your baiting, observe what flies are on the water, or flying near over it, or are on the bushes or trees near ponds or rivers, and that fly which swarms there most is chief in season, and is to be used either natural, or to be imitated by art. Some open the first fish they take, and look into its stomach to see what indigested food there remains, and from thence do take their measures, though uncertain; for either it must be partly consumed, or so discoloured, that it cannot well be known; besides, fish for extreme hunger take in such food at one time as at another they altogether dislike.

Artificial Fly-angling.

Artificial dub-fly, or cast-fly angling, is somewhat more difficult, and requireth more cunning than the former, being more readily learned by seeing it done, than by printed directions: however, I doubt not but to give a satisfactory account of it to the angler.

The first thing to be materially considered is, to know and chuse the proper colours of flies in season when you angle, and these must be proportioned to the places you fish in; for there are different haunts of flies, and are found much earlier in some places than in others, as the season proves hot or cold; a warm spring brings them early, but the contrary later, sometimes by a month, and always sooner in high grounds than in those that are low, marshy, or boggy.

The

The fly required being got, your next business is to make one in colour, shape, proportion of body and wings as like it as possible, always having the natural one as a pattern; and to do this, you must have in readiness bear's hair of divers colours, camel's hair sad, light and of a middle indifferent colour, badger's hair, spaniel's hair, sheep's wool, hog's hair, hog-down, as is comb'd from the roots and bristles of a hog, camblets and mohairs of divers colours, cow's hair, abortive calves and colts hair, furs of squirrels tails, the tails of black cats, yellow and dun cats, of hare's neck, the fern-colour'd ferret's fur, martin's yellow fur, filmer's-fur, tails of white weasels, moles, black rabbits, down of a fox's cub, ash colour at the roots of fox, for that comes off the otter and otter-cub, blackish and brown badger's hair that has been in a skinner's lime-pit; hackels of feathers about a cock or capon's neck, and such as hang loosely down each side the tail, of various colours, particularly to make the palmer-fly or insect called the wood-bed; you must have feathers of all sorts of fowl, and those coloured ones required that you cannot get natural, you may dye.

You must likewise have caddows or blankets, from which are got dubbings, or soft cushions made of skins of abortive calves and colts, like silver wire, gold twist, white and yellow bees-wax for ground-work, or to frame the bodies and heads on, as the nature of the fly more or less requires it, and a neat pair of sharp pointed scissars, to trim and shape the work with.

How to make the Dub-fly.

Wet your materials to know how they will hold colour; for tho' dry, they may appear of the right colour, but may alter being wetted, and consequently be too light or too dark. This done, take the
hook

hook in your left hand, betwixt your fore-finger and thumb, the shanks back upwards, and strong silk of that colour the fly requires, wax it with wax of the same colour, then draw it to the head of the shank betwixt the finger and thumb, and whip it about the bare hook two or three times; draw your line between your thumb and finger, holding the hook so fast, that it may only have a space to pass by; so joining the hook and line, but on the wings, fashion the body and head, by twisting the dubbing on your waxed silk, and lapping it on, then work it by degrees towards the head, and part the wings of an even length, or the fly will not swim upright: then turn it into a proper shape, by nipping off the superfluous dubbing from the silk, so fasten and accoutre the fly. It would be convenient to see one done by an experienced angler, and then these directions will be easy to you.

Directions relating to hub-flie, and angling with them.

1. When you proportion your *dub-fly*, consider the largeness or smallness of the fish you intend it for, and be sure the belly of it is the exact colour, because that is most obvious.

2. Let the tail of the fly be only to the bend of the hook, and not come unto the bent of it.

3. If the *trout* at the top of the water refuse it, the day is not proper for it, or the fly is either out of season or ill-made.

When you angle with the *dub-fly*, it must be in such a river or water as is clear, after rain, or in a river a little discoloured with moss or bogs, in moorish places, or else in a cloudy or gloomy day, when the water is stirred by gentle gales; or if the winds be pretty high, they will rise in the plain deep; but in little wind, the best is to angle in the stream.

Keep

Keep your fly in continual motion in all weathers, to prevent the fish from discerning the fraud ; in clear and low water, let the body of the fly be the smaller, and the wings very slender. In dark weather and thick water, let the fly be of a dark colour, but it must be pretty large body and wings, the better to be discovered : in a clear day, a light coloured fly is preferable.

A rod for the dub-fly should be five yards at least, and the line about seven, or somewhat more, if the water be free from incumbrance of weeds, &c. and to adapt your fly to the colour of the water more properly, have three of a sort, the one light, the next a degree darker, and the third the true colour of the natural fly.

In casting, observe to do it always before you, that it may fall on the water, and no part of the line dash to scare away the fish : and do it if you can without making any circle in the water, but if the wind be high, some part must be in the water, to keep the fly from being blown out. Take your standing so, if possible, that the sun may be in your face, and wind to your back.

In still or slow water, cast your fly almost across the river or pond, and draw it towards you gently a little way, that you break not the water, or put it in trouble, and let it bear with the current, if there be any, fishing downwards and not upwards of the river. Thus having, as I hope, given plain instructions in these matters, to be understood by easy capacities, I proceed to describe artificial flies, for the proper month of angling with them.

Artificial FLIES, proper in the month of the fishing season, and how to make them.

In *February*, the palmer-fly, or plain hackle, must have a rough, black body, which may be done with
black

black spaniel's hair, or the whirl of an ostrich feather, and the red hackle of a capon all over.

The prince dun, that may be dubbed of the down of a fox cub, with ~~dash~~ ash-coloured silk, the wings of a stare's feather; this must be made little.

The little red, brown dub, with the soft hair of the black spot of a hog's ear, the wings of mallards feathers, near the white, wrap it on with red silk.

March. The green tail may be made of the brown hair of a spaniel, taken from the outside of the ear, and a little from the extreme of the tail.

Morish brown may be dubbed with black sheep's wool, red silk, and the wings made of a partridge's wing-feather.

Thorn-tree fly dub, of a very good black, mix a little *Isabella* colour'd mohair, with it make a little body, and the wings of a mallard's brightest feathers.

The early *bright brown* make of the hair of a brown spaniel, that of the flank of a red cow, and wing it with the grey feather of a wild duck.

April. The violet fly, which takes excellently from the sixth to the tenth, made of bear's hair a light dun, mix'd with violet stuff, wing it with the greasy feather of a mallard. The horse-flesh fly, which last all this month, dub with pink colours, blue mohair and tammy, let the head be a dark brown and the wings of a light colour.

The small bright brown is very well taken in a clear day and water, make it of spaniel's fur with a light grey wing.

May. The green drake, an excellent killer, dub on a large hook with camel's hair, bright bear's hair, soft down comb'd from the bristles of a hog, mix yellow camblet; let the body be long, and rib it with green silk mixt with yellow; let the whisks of his
tail

tail be the long hair of *sables*, his wings the light grey feather of a *mallard* dyed yellow.

The stone-fly dub, with dun bear's hair, mix it with a little brown and yellow camblet, that she may be yellower on the belly and tail than any other part, to be the better liked by the fish, who mostly eye the belly of baits; and to adorn it the more, place two or three hairs of the beard of a black cat on the top of the hook, in the whipping or arming, and in warping on your dubbing, staring one from another something upright; rib her with yellow silk; make the wings long and large, of the dark grey feather of a *mallard*, or other such like feather.

The grey drake comes in when the great ones go out, much of shape with it, but in colour differs, and must be made of a paler and more blueish yellow and green, his ribs quite down his body must be of black, with black shining wings very thin, and may be made of the grey feathers of a *mallard*, the down under hogs bristles, and the black hair of a spaniel, and the whisks of his tail, or the beard of a black cat.

June. The ant-fly is dubbed with brown and red camblet, the wing of the feathers of a light grey pidgeon.

The purple-fly, with purple wool mix'd with light brown bear's hair, the wings of a stare's feather, dub it with purple silk.

The brown hackle made of the lightest brown hair of a somewhat grown colt, with a red hackle or cock's neck-feather over it, wrap'd with *hair-colour* or *ash coloured silk*.

July. Orange fly, dub this with orange colour'd cruel or wool, and the feather of a blackbird's wing.

The wasp-fly. Do this with brown dubbing, or else with the hair of a black cat's tail; rib it with yellow

low silk, and make the wings of the grey feather of a *mallard's* wing.

The blue dun must be made with the down of a water mouse, and the bluish down found on an old fox; mix them well together, and dub with sad ash-colour'd silk; the feather of a stare's quill will furnish you with wings.

August. The late ant-fly may be dubbed of the hair of a cow that is of a blackish brown, and for the tagging of the tail's wrap in some red, and make the wing of a dark feather; this fly takes admirably.

The fern-fly must properly be dubbed with the wool taken from a hare's neck, of the colour of fern, when dry, make the wings of the darkish grey feather of a *mallard*.

The hearth-fly, dub of the wool of an aged black ewe, with some grey hair to accommodate the body and head, dub with black silk, and take the light feather of a stare for the wings.

September. The little blue dun made of the fur of a water-mouse, dub it with sad ash colour'd silk, and wing it with the feather of a blue pidgeon.

The late badger. Do this with badger's hair that's black, whip with red silk, and use a darkish grey mallard's feather for the wings.

The camel broom-fly, pull out for dubbing, the hair in the lime of old wall, whip it with red silk, make of the wings of a stare's lightest feather.

October. This month is supplied by the flies of the former, for all being now upon their going away, almost any will do. And thus, reader, keeping to my intended brevity, having picked you out the best killing flies from a great many more, you by knowing how to make these may easily imitate all others, having a natural fly before you, and chusing materials suitable to its colour, by shaping her according

cording to the other; then promise yourself success in angling with her as directed.

Various but curious OBSERVATIONS in ANGLING; divers ways to angle, not commonly known.

Note, that sometimes all sorts of fish take baits at the ground, when but some sorts will take the fly at the top of the water; and therefore to angle for a trout with worm, chuse the running line without any float, only small plummets in their proper places. This is successful at the ground, either in clear or muddy water.

As for the latter, use a line a little more than half the length of the rod, and sometimes less than that length, and the lowermost links must be at least three hairs, and one at top of four, whereof have a water-noose at its bottom; so proceed with links of five or six hairs a piece 'till you come to the topmost, make the lower of *chestnut-colour*, or *sorrel-brown*. Then to your reed or cane, have a top neither too stiff nor too feeble, but between both; the cane about three yards and a half long, and the top about a yard and a half, or near two yards, in one or two pieces, and five or six inches of whalebone, smooth, round, and pliant.

Observe to lead your line as is consistent with the water, in rough streams more than in small gentle streams, and least of all in still water; then carry the top or point of your rod level with your hand, and so you will by the point of your rod perceive the bite at the ground, then strike strait and gently upwards, and by a little slackening your hand before, you will give the fish time the better to take the bait.

If a large trout you angle for in muddy water, then it requires some art in baiting of your hook, as suppose the bait is a dew-worm, here you must thrust the hook in towards the tail, a little above the middle,

dle, and out again below the head, then draw him above the arming of the hook, or whipping, so put the point into the head of the worm, until it is very near the place where the point of the hook first came out, and so draw back the worm, or that part that was above the shank. This hook should be indifferent large.

To bait two worms in muddy water for a *trout*, &c. from eight to ten inches: take meadow worms or brandlings, or a brandling and gilt tail, and run the point of the hook in at the head down the body, till it pass the knot, or come to the middle of the worm; then stir it above the arming or whipping, put on the other, by running the hook in the same manner, and let the head of it just cover the point of the hook, then slip the first down till the knots or middle of both worms meet together; and thus you may do by any other worms, for other fish, as by the foregoing directions you find they take them.

Directions for ANGLING with the running line in clear water.

Put a gilt tail and small brandling on your hook, before directed, well scour'd, and here your hook must be much smaller than in muddy water, two or three of the lowermost links of your line of a single hair, so rise from two or three, or four, of a grey or duskyish white, the line about two yards shorter than the rod, leaded with a small black plummet.

Angle with this in a stream always up it, in a river with a light hand, still casting up the worm before you; let the rod be as the former: and thus you may angle for *salmon-smelts*, *trout*, or *grayling*, to whose proper baits I refer you in my treatise of baits in this book.

Directions

Directions for the TOP-WATER ANGLING with a worm.

Your line in this case must be longer than your rod, without any plummet or float, drawing your bait down and up the stream, in a clear day, with a gentle hand, that it may glide as if it were swimming, and your bait here must be a gilt-tail or brandling, keep it from the shore, and free from entanglement of weeds, woods, rushes, or other incumbrances that hinder sport.

Further Directions for FLOAT-ANGLING.

Here your line must be two or three feet longer than your rod in rivers, but in ponds and pits something shorter. Angling in clear water for *salmon-smelts*, *trouts*, or *graylings*, you must put but one hair next the hook, but in muddy water, and for other fish, two or three, observing the running line and rod for the *tench*, and proportion this to it, lead it moderately, but so that it may keep the line strait and even; but for *tench*, *carp*, *barbel*, or *chub*, your rod and line must have an additional strength in the thickness of the one, and the numbers of hairs in the other; and your float manageable in the water, proportioned according to the swiftness or slowness of the water, but with one worm, the water being very clear; and observe for some sort of fish, as *flounders*, *salmon-smelts*, *bream* and *gudgeon*, your bait must drag on the ground: but for other sorts, as, *tench*, *roach*, *bleak*, *pike*, *ruff*, and *carp*, at mid-water; for *grayling* and *pearl*, at six or nine inches from the bottom. The *chub* is often taken at bottom, mid-water and top.

You may use the divers sorts of baits, angling with a float, but ground baits are most frequently used, and with success.

Directions

Directions for DRABBLING.

By this, *barbels* of a large size are taken; to do it compleatly observe these rules.

Have a strong line of six yards, which, before you fasten it to your rod, must be put through a piece of lead, that if the fish bite, it may slip to and fro, and that the water may something move it on the ground, bait it with a pretty large lob-worm well scour'd, and so by its motion the *barbel* will be enticed into the danger without suspicion. The best places are in running water near piles, or under wooden bridges, supported with oaks floated and slimy.

Angling with the LEDGER-BAIT.

This is used for variety of exercise, to give rest to the angler, and so differs from others that are called walking baits, and this is, when the bait continues to rest in one fixed and certain place.

Here you must take off your float, but let the lead remain, and within half a yard of the top of the line wrap a thin plate of lead, an inch and a half long, and pretty broad, *viz.* about an inch; so fasten your line to your rod, cast in your bait either into a still flow draught, or gentle stream, and when it is at the bottom, you may stick your rod in the bank of the river, or hold it in your hand at discretion, and by the bending of the rod, or motion of the lead at top, you will perceive when the fish bite: give her some time, and strike contrary to where her head lies. The *chub* and *eel* are successfully taken this way.

To lay NIGHT-HOOKS.

To do this effectually, procure a small cord, which may be about sixteen yards long, and to this, at equal distances, tie five or six fine twisted flax or silk lines, about eighteen inches each, of the thickness of your trowling line, fasten them so that they may be easily removed,

removed and put on again, whip to the ends of each of them a pretty strong hook, but with a loach, minnow, or bull-head, the fins and gills cut off; or, these being wanting, the seven eyes, *eel* brood, small *roach*, *gudgeon*, the pith of an *ox* or *cow's* back-bone, &c. will serve for the fish; put the point of the hook in the tail, and out at the mouth, so that the fish's head may have a resting in the hook's bent, and that the point may not be discovered, cover it with a worm, casting the cord, by a weight, over the river, stream, or pond, fasten both ends to stakes on either side; and be there early in the morning, and expect *chub*, large *eels*, *trout* or *pike*, but for a *pike* keep the bait with a float about a foot or something more from the bottom.

For this, to gather the fish, you may bait the ground with blood and grains, or sewet made up in sweet earth, taken from under the green sward, or pastes, &c.

Choice RECEIPTS; or rare SECRETS, never before made public.

Take oil of amber, rosemary and myrrh, an equal quantity, infuse in them any worms, or mingle paste with them, and the fish, if near, will hasten to the bait so dipped, and then not have power to go away, till she either nibbles off the bait, or is taken.

Ground-bait for *carp* with unprickled samphire bruised, and made into balls, with walnut-oil. This likewise allures *tench* and *bream*.

Over night mix bean-flour with a little honey, wet it with rectify'd spirits of wine, and a little oil of turpentine, make it up with little pellets, and such fish as nibble it, when thrown in, will be stupified, so that in the morning coming to themselves a little, they will bite very eagerly, as being, after their drunken fit, exceeding hungry.

A special WINTER bait to get and preserve.

When plowing begins in *Autumn*, before any frosts come that are forcible, to make entrance into the earth, observe where the ploughs are going, if there be store of crows, lighted on the ground, especially in that which is heathy, sandy, or green land, follow, and you will find a white worm bigger than a gentle, having a red head, which is held to breed of the spawn or egg of a beetle left in those holes she digs in the ground under horse or cow dung, which in *March* or *April*, turns to a beetle again: you may put about two quarts of these into about half a bushel of the same mould: when you gather them, put them in a tub or other vessel, where the frost or wind may not come to kill them, and by this means, when most other baits are out, you may be provided all the seasonable times in winter, and early in the spring.

Unseasonable TIMES to ANGLE in.

Having spoke much of proper times to accommodate the angler, I shall now speak something more of unseasonable ones, that those who are ignorant in this art, as to the niceties of it, may not loose their labour.

In the morning, either in the spring or advancing of the season, if a hoary frost happen, the fish will be backward in biting that day, and little sport can be expected, for they will not freely rise, except in the evening; and soon after they have spawned they will not bite to the purpose, till with grass and weeds they have well purged and scoured themselves, so that they may by that means recover their strength and appetite.

'Tis not proper to fish when the north or east winds are sharp.

In brooks that are small and clear, where the water is kept up by mills or dams, it is not good angling, for there especially the *trout* keeps her hole, and others bite faintly.

Several other useful OBSERVATIONS *and* DIRECTIONS.

Be sure always to keep your shadow off the water, and therefore let the sun be in your face, or on one side of you when you angle, keeping out of sight and making no noise; and when you are bent for *trout*, you need make but three or four essays with the ground-bait or fly; for if it comes not then to bite or offer, either there is not any there, or they keep close in their holes.

To catch FISH.

Take nettles, cinguefain, and chop small, then mix some juice of houghleek with it, rub your hands therewith, and throw it into the water, and keep your hands in the water, and the fish will come to them, that you may take them: or, take heart-wort and lime, mingle them together, and throw it into a standing water, and it will fox them, that you may take them with your hands.

To take PIKE *as he lies sleeping and sunning in fair weather, with a loop or net.*

March and August the best times. Take a long pole or rod that is light and straight, on the small end fasten a running loop of twisted horse-hair and silk, of a large compass, which gently draw on him, when it is five or six inches over his gill, hoist him up, if it is a small *pike*, draw it not so far on, and make no noise in walking or speaking: if he lies so that you cannot conveniently noose him, touch his tail with the rod, and he'll turn as you please, also with a

hand net, putting it gently under water, guide it just under him, and lift it softly till you almost touch him, and then do it as quick as you can.

To invite FISH.

If you take *occulis Indicus*, and make little balls of it with cummin, old cheese, wheat-flour, and wine, (let the balls be no bigger than pease) and throw them in a standing water or calm places where fish are, all that taste of it will be presently stupified, swimming to the shore as if they were drunk, so that you may take them with your hand.

To make and order FISH-PONDS.

Moorish-ground, and such as is full of springs is best; the first breeds them well, the last prevents their being stolen; next, let your pond be so ordered, that it may receive the rain-water that falls from the hills, for that mightily refreshes them; and if your pond can receive the piss of horses and other cattle, they'll produce the largest and fattest fish. Let your pond's head be at the lowest part of the ground, and let the flood gates have a quick and swift fall, that when you go to empty it, you may not be too long about it: in building your pond, the best way is to drive a row of stakes of 6 or 7 feet long, and 6 or 7 inches square, and 4 feet distance; elm is better than oak; drive them in the length of the pond's head, and ram the first row four feet and a half deep, then they'll be strong. Next dig your pond and throw the earth among the stakes and piles; when they are covered well, drive another row over them, and ram the earth in the void places, that it lie close and keep the water in the better; and thus you must continue stake on stake, ramming the earth till the head be as high as you would have it.

Let

Let the inside of the dam be smooth, that no current may have power over it; let your pond carry six feet water, and be eight feet deep, to receive the rains that fall into it: floor the bottom with large turfs of flot-grafs, close join'd and stak'd down, stake also on the pond side several faggots of light wood, but not oak, for that's bitter and offensive: these faggots shelter the fish, and after they cast their spawn preserve them from vermin, and the young fish from devourers; let them also have some retiring places by roots of trees, hollow banks, both to cherish them in cold and heat, and preserve them from danger; *carp*, *tench*, and *bream*, store by themselves; *perch* and *pike* by themselves; put into it either *minnows* or *dace*, but *roach* are injurious to all ponds and great breeders. Ponds with strong sandy bottoms, that lie warm and out of the wind, with nut-trees and willows also sheltered, are the best for *carp* to breed in, and new made ponds breed better than old, that are full of weeds and mud, therefore every three years cleanse them from the mud filth. To make a store pond, sow it, put in all *spawners*, or all *millers*; observe, that store ponds afford the largest and fattest *carp*. In a breeding pond put three *spawners* to one *miller*. Draw your pond about *Allhallowtide*, and keep of females a sufficient number for breeding. Indeed, you ought not to kill any of them. They'll live and breed 50 or 60 years; but you may kill *all* live males that are about three years old, and put the rest, that are three, two, or one year old, into the pond again, as many of them as the pond will maintain: this do once every year.

Feed your *pike*, *carp*, and other fish, with bread, grains; chippings of bread, entrails of chickens, &c.

OF BUCK HUNTING.

HAVING, under the article *Hart*, (which see) treated so largely, as to their nature, and the ways of hunting them, there needs the less to be said as to hunting the buck, and the rules for taking him; for he that can hunt a *hart* or *stag* well, will not hunt a *buck* ill.

Besides, *fallow deer* being common among us, and those usually in parks and inclosures of divers situations and staturs, different from one another; it would be a difficult task to give instructions for every particular.

And indeed it is the proper business for every keeper of parks, &c. to understand the nature and craft of his deer in hunting; all are to be acquired by experience more than reading; however, I shall briefly inform you of what relates to *buck-hunting*, as now practised.

There is no such skill and art required in lodging a *buck*, as in harbouring a *hart* or *stag*, nor so much drawing after, but you may judge by the view, and observe what grove or coppice he enters; for a *buck* does not wander up and down as a *hart*, nor change his layer so often, neither uses so many crossings, doublings, shifts and devices, nor doth he flee so far before the *hounds*, but avoids the high-way and open places, as much as he can; he is not so crafty or so strong to beat a river, or to stay so long at foil; neither is he so free to take a great river, nor must it be deep; but being close hunted, he will flee into such strong coverts as he is accustomed to, and it has been observed that some bucks that have leaped over a park pale, after a ring or two, have returned of themselves,

themselves, chusing rather to die where they have been acquainted, than in a strange place.

The *buck* groans and trots as the *hart* belleth, and with a worfe noise and rattling in the throat, leaps lighter at the rut than the *stag*; neither will these two beasts come near one another's layer, and they have seldom or never any other relays than the old hounds.

They also herd more than the *hart* does, and lie in the driest places, though if they are at large, they herd but little from *May* to *August*.

Now the greatest subtilty a huntsman needs to use in hunting the *buck*, is to have a care of hunting, counting, or change, because of the plenty of *fallow deer* that use to come more directly upon the hounds than the red deer does.

The does begin to fawn about the end of *May*, and continue till *Midsummer*.

The bucks mew or shed their horns or heads every year, about, or in *April*, and part of *May*, and their new ones are burnished about the end of *August*.

The buck makes his *Fewmishing* in divers manners and forms as the *hart*, according to the diversity of food, and the time of the day, morning and evening; but they are most commonly round.

The buck comes in season the eighth of *July*, and goes out at *holy-rood*, which is the fourteenth of *September*.

The doe comes in season when the buck goes out, and goes out at *twelfth-tide*.

In buck-hunting the same hounds are used as in running the *stag*. In forests and chases, as they lie at layer, so they are hunted.

In parks where they are inclosed, the sport is not so diverting by reason of the greater change and soil, unless they break out and run the country, which they seldom do.

But deer that lie out though near the park, make for the generality better chases than forest deer.

The keeper shooting a BUCK to be run down.

In order to facilitate the chase, the keeper commonly selects a fat buck out of the herd, which he shoots to maim him, and then he is run down by the hounds.

As to the method of hunting the *buck*; the company generally go out very early for the benefit of the morning, sometimes they have a deer ready lodged, if not, the coverts are drawn till one is rouzed; or sometimes in a park a deer is pitched upon, and forced from the herd, then more hounds are laid on to run the chase; if you come to be at a fault, the old staunch hounds are only to be relied upon till you recover him again: if he be sunk and the hounds thrust him up, it is called an *imprime*, and the company all sound a *recheat*; when he is run down, every one strives to get in to prevent his being torn by the hounds, fallow-deer seldom or never standing at bay.

He that first gets in cries hoo-up, to give notice that he is down and blows a death. When the company are all come, they paunch him and reward the *hounds*; and generally the chief person of quality amongst them *takes say*, that is, cut his belly open, to see how fat he is.

When this is done, every one has a chop at his neck, and the head being cut off is shewed to the *hounds* to encourage them to run only at male deer, which they see by the horns, and to teach them to bite only at the head: then the company all standing in a ring, one blows a single death, which being done, all blow a double *recheat*, and conclude the chase, with a general hallo of hoo-up, and depart the field to their several homes, or places of meeting;

ing; and the huntsman or some other, hath the deer cross the buttocks of his horse, and so carries him home.

Of HARTS.

A HART is the most noble and stately beast, and in the first year is called a *hind-calf*, in the second a *knobber*, in the third a *brock*, in the fourth, a *staggard*, in the fifth, a *stag*, and in the sixth a *hart*.

Harts are bred in most countries, but the ancients prefer those of *Britain* before all others, where they are of divers colours.

These excel all others in the beauty of their horns, which are very high, yet do not grow to their bones or scalps, but to their skins, branching forth into many spears, being solid throughout, and as hard as stones, and fall off once a year.

But if they remain abroad in the air; and if they are by that means sometimes wet and sometimes dry, they grow as light as any other less solid substance; by which it should seem they are of an earthy substance, concrete, and hardened with a strong heat, made like unto bones.

They lose their horns every year in the spring.

At one year old they have nothing but bunches, that are small signifiers of horns to come: at two years they appear more perfectly, but strait and single: at three years they grow into two spears; at four into three, and so increase every year in their branches till they are six; and above that time their age is not certainly to be known by the head.

Having lost their horns, in the day-time they hide themselves, inhabiting the shades, to avoid the an-

noyance of flies, and feed, during that time, only in the night.

Their new horns come out at first like bunches, and afterwards (as has been said before) by the increase of the sun's heat they grow more hard, covered with a rough skin, which is called a *velvet head*; and as that skin drieth, they daily try the strength of their new heads upon trees, which not only scrapeth off the roughness, but by the pain they feel by thus rubbing them, they are taught how long to forbear the company of their fellows; for at last, when in their chaffing and fretting of their new horns against the trees, they can feel no longer pain and smart in them, they seem as if they thought it were high time to forsake their solitary dwellings, and return again to their former condition.

It has been observed, that when a hart pricketh up his ears, he windeth sharp, very far and sure, and discovereth all treachery against him; but if they hang down and wag, he perceives no danger.

Their age is discerned by their teeth; they have four on both sides, with which they grind their meat, besides two others, which are much larger in the male than in the female.

All these beasts have worms in their heads, underneath their tongues, in a hollow place where the neck bone is joined to the head, which are no bigger than fly-blows.

The blood of the hart is not like that of other beasts for it hath no fibres in it, and therefore it is hardly congealed.

His heart is very great, and so are those of fearful beasts, having in it a bone like a cross.

He hath no gall, and that is one of the causes of his long life, and therefore are his bowels so bitter, that the dogs will not touch them unless they be very fat.

The genital part of a *hart* is all nervous, the tail small, and a hind hath udders between her thighs, with four speans like a cow.

These are, above all other beasts, both ingenious and fearful, who although they have large horns, yet their defence against other four-footed beasts is to run away.

The *hart* is strangely amazed, when he hears any one call or whistle in his fist: for trial of which, some seeing a *hart* in the plain in motion, have called after him, crying, *ware, ware, take heed*; and thereupon have seen him instantly turn back, making some little stand.

He hears very perfectly when his head and ears are erected, but imperfectly when he lets them down.

When he is on foot, and not afraid, he admires every thing he sees, and takes a pleasure to gaze at them.

A *hart* can naturally swim a great way, insomuch that some which have been hunted in forests near the sea, have plunged into it, and have been killed by fishermen twelve miles from land.

It is reported of them, that when they go to rut, and for that purpose are obliged to pass some great river or arm of the sea, they assemble in great herds, the strongest going in first, and the next in strength following him, and so one after the other, relieving themselves by staying their heads on the buttocks of each other.

The *hind* commonly carries her calf eight or nine months which usually falls in *May*, although some of them have two at once, and eat up the skin wherein the calf did lie.

As the calf grows up, she teaches it to run, leap, the way it must take to defend itself from the hounds.

Harts and *hinds* are very long lived, living commonly an hundred years and upwards.

Of HART-HUNTING.

The huntsman must first of all encompass the beast in his own layer, and so unharbour him in the view of the dogs, that so they may never lose his flot or footing.

Neither must he set upon every one, either of the herd, or those that wander solitary alone, or a little one, but partly by sight, and partly by their footing and fumets make a judgment of the game, and also observe the largeness of his layer.

The huntsman having made these discoveries in order to the chase, takes off the couplings of the dogs, and some on horseback, and others on foot, follow the cry with the greatest art, observation and speed, remembering and intercepting him in his subtle turnings and headings; with all agility leaping hedges, gates, pales and ditches; neither fearing thorns, down hills nor woods, but mounting fresh horse if the first tire; follow the largest head of the whole herd, which must be singled out of the chase, which the dogs perceiving must follow; not following any other.

The dogs are animated to the sport by the winding of horns and the voices of the huntsmen.

But sometimes the crafty beast sends forth his little squire to be sacrificed by the dogs and hunters instead of himself, lying close the mean time. In this case, the huntsman must sound a retreat, break off the dogs, and take them in, that is, leam them again, until they be brought to the fairer game; which riseth with fear, yet still driveth by flight, until he be wearied and breathless.

The nobles call the beast a *wise hart*, who, to avoid all his enemies, runneth into the greatest herds, and so brings a cloud of error on the dogs, to obstruct their farther pursuit; sometimes also beating

beating some of the herd upon his footings, that so he may more easily escape, by amusing the dogs.

Afterwards he betakes himself to his heels again, still running with the wind, not only for the sake of refreshment, but also because by that means he can the more easily hear the voice of his pursuers, whether they be far from him or near to him.

But at last being discovered by the hunters, and sagacious scent of the dogs, he flies into the herds of cattle, as cows, sheep, &c. leaping on a cow or ox, laying the fore parts of his body thereon, that so touching the earth only with his hinder feet, he may leave a very small or no scent at all behind for the hounds to discern.

A chief huntsman to *Lewis XII. of France*, affirms that on a time, they having a *hart* in chace, on a sudden the hounds were at a fault, so as the game was out of sight, and not a dog would once stir his foot, at which the hunters were all amazed ; at last, by casting their eyes about, they discovered the fraud of the crafty beast.

There was a great white thorn, which grew in a shadowy place, as high as a moderate tree, which was encompassed about with other small shrubs ; into this the *hart* having leaped, stood there aloft, the boughs spreading from one to another, and there remained till he was thrust through by the huntsman, rather than he would yield himself up a prey to the hounds his mortal enemies.

But their usual manner is, when they see themselves hard beset, and every way intercepted, to make force at their enemies with their horns, who first comes upon him, unless they be prevented by spear or sword.

When the beast is slain, the huntsman with his horn windeth the fall of the beast, and then the whole company comes up, blowing their horns in triumph
for

for such a conquest; among whom, the skilfullest opens the beast, rewards the hounds with what properly belongs to them, for their future encouragement: for which purpose the huntsmen dip bread in the skin and blood of the beast, to give to the hounds.

Of the rut of HARTS.

Their rutting time is about the middle of *September*, and continues two months: the older they are the hotter, and the better they please the *hinds*, and therefore they go to rut before the young ones; and being very fiery, they will not suffer any of them to come near the *hinds*, till they have satisfied their venereal appetite.

But for all this, the young ones are even with the old; for when they perceive that the old are grown weak by excess of rutting, the young will frequently attack them, and make them quit the place, that they may be masters of the sport.

They may be easily killed in rutting-time, for they follow the scent of the *hinds* with so much eagerness, laying their noses to the ground, that they mind that only and nothing else.

It is dangerous for any man to come near them at that time, for then they will make at any living creature of a different kind.

In some place their lust arises in *October*, and also in *May*; and then, whereas at other times the males live apart from the females, they go about like lascivious lovers, seeking the company of the females.

The males, in their raging lust, make a peculiar noise.

One male will cover many females, continuing in this appetite for one or two months.

The females seem chaste, and unwilling to admit of copulation, by reason of the rigour of the *genital* of the male; and therefore they sink down on their buttocks

tocks when they begin to feel his *semen*, as it has been observed in tame *harts*; and if they can, the females run away, the males striving to hold them back with their fore feet.

It cannot be well said that they are covered standing, lying, or going, but rather running; for so are they filled with greatest severity.

When one month or six weeks is over of their rutting, they grow much tamer; and laying aside all fierceness, they return to their solitary place, digging every one by himself a several hole or ditch, in which they lie to assuage the strong savour of their lust; for they stink like goats, and their face begins to look blacker than at other times: and in those places they live till some showers of rain fall; after which they return to the pasture again, living in flocks as they did before.

The females having been thus filled, never associate again with the male till she is delivered of her burthen, which is in about eight months, and produces generally but one at a time, very seldom two; which she lodges cunningly in some covert. If she perceive them stubborn and wild, she will beat them with her feet till they lie close and quiet.

She oftentimes leadeth forth her young; teaching it to run, and leap over bushes, stones, and small shrubs, and so continueth all the summer long, while their own strength is the most considerable.

It is very pleasant to observe them when they go out to rut, and make their vault: for when they smell the hind, they raise their nose up into the air; and if it be a great *hart*, he will turn his head and look about to see whether there be none near him to interrupt and spoil his sport.

Upon this, the young fly away for fear; but if there be any of equal bigness, they then strive which shall vault first; and in the opposing each other, they
scrape

scrape the ground with their feet, shocking and butting each other so furiously, that they may hear the noise they make with their horns, a good half mile, so long till one of them is conqueror.

The *hind* beholding this encounter, never stirs from her station, expecting, as it were, the vaulting of him who shall get the mastery, who having got it, bellows, and then instantly covers her.

Of the coats and colours of HARTS.

The coats of *harts* are of three different sorts, *brown*, *red*, and *fallow* : and of each of these coats there proceeds two sorts of harts, the one great and the other small.

Of *brown harts*, there are some great, long and hairy, bearing a high head, of a red colour and well beamed, who will stand before the hounds very long, being longer of breadth, and swifter of foot than those of a shorter stature.

There are another sort of brown *hart*, which are little, short and well set, bearing commonly a black mane, and are fatter and better venison than the former, by reason of their better feeding in young coppices.

They are very crafty, especially when in grease, and will be hardly found, because they know they are then most enquired after ; besides they are sensible they cannot stand long before the hounds.

If they be old and feed on good ground, then are their heads black, fair, and well branched, and commonly palmed at the top.

The *fallow harts* bear their heads high and of a whitish colour, their beams small, their antlers long, slender, and ill grown ; having neither heart, courage, nor force.

But those that are of a lively *red fallow*, having a black or brown list down the ridge of the back, are

are strong, bearing fair and high heads, well furnished and beamed.

Of the head, and branches of HARTS.

As there are several sorts of *harts*, so also they have different heads, according to their age, country, rest and feeding.

Here you must take notice, that they bear not their first head (which we call *broches*, and in the fallow deer *pricks*) until they enter the second year of their age.

In the third year they bear four, six, or eight small branches; at the fourth, they bear eight or ten: at the fifth, ten or twelve: at six, fourteen or sixteen: and the seventh year, they bear their heads beamed, branched and summed, which is as much as ever they will bear, and do never multiply but in greatness only.

The time of HARTS mewing or casting their heads.

An old *hart* casteth his head sooner than the young, and the time is about the months of *February* and *March*.

Here *note*, that if you geld a hart before he hath a head, he will never bear any; and if you geld him when he has a head, he will never after mew and cast it: and so if he be gelded when he hath a velvet head, it will ever be so, without fraying or burnishing.

As soon as they have cast their heads, they instantly withdraw into the thickets, hiding themselves in such convenient places where they can have good water and strong feeding, near some ground where wheat and pease are sown: but young harts do never betake themselves to the thickets till they have borne their third head, which is the fourth year.

After they have mewed, they will begin to button in *March* and *April*; and as the sun grows strong,
and

and the season of the year puts forwards the crops of the earth, so will their heads increase in all respects; so that by the middle of *June*, their heads will be summed as much as they will bear all the year.

The names and diversity of Heads, according to the terms used by Hunters.

The part which bears the *antlers*, *royals*, and *tops* is called the *beam*, and the little streaks there are called *gutters*.

That which is about the crust of the *beam* is termed *pearls*, and that which is about the bur itself, formed like little *pearls*, is called, *pearls bigger than the rest*.

The bur is next the head, and that which is about the bur is called *pearls*; the first is called *antler*, the second *sur-antler*: all the rest which grow afterwards, until you come to the crown, palm, or croche, are called *royals*, and *sur-royals*; the little buds or broches about the top, are called *croches*.

Their *heads* also go by several names; the *first* head is called a *crowned top*, because the *croches* are ranged in form of a crown.

The *second* is called a *palmed top*, because the *croches* are formed like a man's hand.

Thirdly, all heads which bear not above three or four, the *croches* being placed aloft, all of one height, in form of a cluster of huts, are to be called heads of so many *croches*.

Fourthly, all heads which bear two in top, or having their *croches* doubling, are to be called *forked heads*.

Fifthly, all heads which have double burs, or the *antlers*, *royals* and *croches*, turned downwards, contrary to other heads, are called *heads*.

How

How to know an old HART by the slot, entries, abaturs, foil, fewmets, gate and walks, fraying-stocks, head and branches.

First, by the slot. You must take good notice of treading of the *hart's* foot; if you find the treading of two, the one long and the other round, yet both of one bigness, yet the long *slot* will indicate the *hart* to be much larger than the round.

And besides, the old *hart's* hind foot doth never over-reach the fore foot; that of the young ones do.

But above all, take this observation; When you have found the *slot* of a *hart* in the wood, take notice what manner of footing it is, whether worn, or sharp; and accordingly observe the country, and judge by that whether either may be occasioned thereby.

For *harts* bred in mountains and stoney countries, have the toes and sides of their feet worn, by means of their continual climbing and resting themselves thereon, and not on the heel; whereas in other places they stay themselves more on the heel than toes, for in soft or sandy ground they slip upon the heel, by reason of their weight; and thus by frequent staying themselves thereon, it makes the heel grow broader and bigger.

And thus may the age of a *hart* be known by his *slot* or treading.

The next thing to be considered is the *fewmets*; and this is to be judged in *April* and *May*. If the *fewmets* or fewmishing be large and thick, they intimate that the *hart* is old.

In the months of *June* and *July*, they make their *fewmets* in large croseys, very soft; and from that time to the end of *August*, they make them large, long, knotty and anointed, and gilded, letting them fall but few and scattered.

In *September* and *October*, there is no longer passing a judgment by them, by reason of the rut.

Thirdly, in order to know the height and thickness of a *hart*, observe his entries and galleries into the thickets, and what boughs he has over-stridden, and mark from thence the height of his belly from the ground.

By the height of the entries, a judgment is made of the age of a *hart*; for a young deer is such as usually creep, but the old ones are stiff and stately.

His largeness may be known by the height of his creeping as he passes to his harbour, the young deer creeping low, which the old will not stoop to.

Fourthly, take notice of his *gait*, by which you may know whether the *hart* be great and long, and whether he will stand long before the hounds or not; for all *harts* which have a long step will stand up a long while, being swift, light and well breathed; but if he leaves a great slot, which is a sign of an old deer, he will not stand long when he is chased.

Lastly, take notice of his *fraying-post*; where observe, that by how much the *hart* is the older, the sooner he goes to fray, and the larger is the tree he chuses to fray against, and one so strong that he cannot bend with his head.

All stags as they are furnished, beat their heads dry against some tree or other, which is called their *fraying-post*; the younger deer do it against weaker, lesser and lower trees; so that accordingly hunters judge confidently of their age, and the nearness of their harbour, for that is the last action or ceremony they use before they enter it.

As to the *head* and *branches*, a *hart* is old; *First*, when the compass of the bur is large, great and well pearled.

Secondly,

Secondly, when the beam is large burthened and well pearled, being strait, and not rendered crooked by antlers.

Thirdly, when the gutters in it are large and deep.

Fourthly, when the first antler, called *anteiller*, is large, long, and near to the bur, the fur-antler near to the antler; and they ought to be both well pearled.

Fifthly, the rest of the branches which are higher, being well ordered and set, and well grown, according to the largeness and proportion of the head: and the croches, palm, or crown, being great and large too, according to the largeness of the beam, are signs of an old *hart*.

How to seek a HART in his haunts and feeding-places, according to the seasons of the year.

All *harts* change their manner of feeding every month; and forasmuch as *November* is the conclusion of their rutting-time, I shall begin with that: in this they feed in heaths and broomy places.

In *December* they herd together, and withdraw themselves into the strengths of the forests, to shelter themselves from the cold winds, snows, and frosts, feed on the holm trees, elder trees, brambles, and whatsoever green thing they can find; and if it snow, they will skin or peel the trees like a goat.

In *January*, *February* and *March*, they leave herding, but will keep four or five in company, and in the corners of the forest will feed on the winter pasture, sometimes making their incursions into the neighbouring corn-fields, if they can perceive the blades of wheat, rye, or the like appear above ground.

In *April* and *May*, they rest in their thickets and other bushy and shady places, during that season, and stir very little till rutting time, unless they are disturbed.

There

There are some *harts* so cunning, that they will have several layers to harbour in, a good distance one from the other, and will frequently change (for their greater security) from the one to the other; taking still the benefit of the wind.

In these months they go not to the soil, by reason of the moisture of the spring, and the dew that continually overspreads the grass.

In *June*, *July* and *August*, they are in the pride of their grease, and do resort to spring coppices and corn fields, only they seldom go where rye or barley grows.

In *September* and *October* they leave their thickets and go to the rut, during which season they have no certain place either for food or harbour.

After what manner a Huntsman should go drawing in the springs.

He ought not to come too early in the springs or hewts where he thinks the *hart* feedeth, and is at relief, for they usually go to their layers in the springs, and if they be old, crafty deer, they will return to the border of the coppice, and there listen whether they can bear any ~~reproaching~~ approaching danger, and if they once chance to vent the Huntsman or the hound, they will instantly dislodge.

Now is the Huntsman's proper time; let him beat the outsides of the springs or thickets; if he find the track of a *hart* or *deer*, he ought to observe whether it be fresh, which may be known by the following tokens, the dew will be beaten off, the soil fresh, or the ground broken, or printed with other tokens; so he may judge his game lately went that way.

Having found his flot or treading, and the hound sticking well upon it, let him hold him short; for he shall draw better, being so held, than if he were let at length of the leam; and thus let him draw till he is come to the covert, if possible, taking notice by the

the way, of the flot, falls, entries, and the like, till he hath harboured him.

Having done this, let him plash down small twigs, some above and some below, as he shall think fit, and the while the hound is hot, let him beat the out-sides and make ring-walks twice or thrice about the wood, one while by the great and open ways, that he may help himself by the eye; another while through the thickets and coverts, for fear lest his hounds should overshoot it, having still better scent in the coverts than highways.

If he is in doubt whether the *hart* is gone out of the ring-walks, or fear he has drawn amiss, then let him go to the marks that he plashed, and draw counter, till he may take up the fewmet.

Directions for harbouring a STAG.

The harbourer having taught his hound to draw mute always round the outside of the covert, as soon as his hound challenges, which he knows by his eager flourishing and straining his leam, he then is to seek for his flot; if he finds his heel thick, and the toe spreading broad, these are signs that it is an old deer, especially if it be fringed, that is broken on both the sides.

And if the ground be too hard to make any judgment from the flot, he must draw into the covert as he passes, observing the size of the entries; the larger and higher, the older the deer: as also his croppings of the tenders as he passes, the younger the deer the lower, the older the deer the higher are the branches.

He ought also to observe the few mishings as he passes, the largeness of which bespeaks the largeness of the deer: He must also be curious in observing the fraying post, which is usually the last opportunity he has to judge by; the eldest deer fraying highest
against

against the largest trees, and that being found, it may be concluded his harbour is not far off.

Therefore he ought to draw with more circumspection, checking the drawing-hound to secure him from spending when he comes so near as to have the deer in the wind, which when you have discovered by his eagerness that draws him, let him retire some distance back, and round the place with the hound, first at a considerable distance, and then if he finds him not disturbed, let him make a second round within that; and this will not only secure you that he is in the harbour, but will also secure his continuance there; for he will not (except he be forced) pass that taint your hound left in the rounding of him.

So that having broke a bough for his direction, he may at any time unharbour that *hart*.

How to find a HART lost the night before.

A Huntsman may fail of killing a *hart* divers ways; sometimes by reason of great heat, or by being overtaken with the night, or the like.

If it should happen so, do as follows.

First, they who follow the hounds, must mark the place where they left the chace, and at break of day bring the blood hound to it, with the kennel after him.

If any hound vents, whom he knows to be no liar nor babbler, he shall put his hound to it, whooping twice, or blowing two notes with his horn, to call all his fellows about him; and if he find where the *hart* is gone into some likely covert or grove, then must he draw his hounds about it, and if he there renews the flot or view, let him first consider whether it be right or not, if it be right let him blow his horn.

And

And if he happens to find five or six layers, let it not seem strange, for *harts* hunted and spent do frequently make many layers together, because they cannot stand, but lie and feed.

Harts which are hunted, most commonly run up the wind, and strait forwards as far as they are able, and finding any water or soil, do stay a long time therein, by which means their joints are so benumbed and stiffened, that coming out, they cannot go far, nor stand up long, and therefore are forced to take up with any harbour they can find which may be a present covert to them.

How to find a HART in high woods.

In the seeking of a *hart* in high woods, you must have regard to two things; that is, the thickets of the forest and the season.

If it be in very hot weather, gnats, horse-flies, and the like, drive the deer out of the high woods, and they disperse themselves into small groves and thickets, near places of good feeding.

According to the coverts which are in the forest, so must the Huntsman make his enquiry; for sometimes the *hart* lies in the tufts of white-thorn, sometimes under little trees, other whiles under great trees in the high woods, and sometimes in the skirts of the forest, under the shelter of little groves and coppices.

And therefore the Huntsman must make his ring-walk large or small, according to the largeness of those harbours or coverts.

How to unharbour a HART and cast off the hounds.

When the relays are well set and placed, let the Huntsman with his pole walk before the kennel of hounds; and being come to the blemishes, let him take notice of the flot, and such other marks as may

be observed from the view of the deer, in order that he may know whether the hounds run riot or not.

Then the huntsman must cast abroad about the covert, to discover the *bare* when he is unharboured, the better to distinguish him by his head or otherwise.

If the blood-hound, in drawing, chance to overshoot, and draw wrong or counter, then the huntsman must draw him back, saying, *Back, back, soft, soft*, until he hath set him right again; and if he perceive that the hound hath mended his fault, by his kneeling down and observing the flot or ports, he must then cherish him, by clapping him on the back, and giving him encouraging words; thus must he draw on with his hounds till he descrites the deer.

Some deers are so cunning and crafty, that when they are unharboured from their layer, they will coast round about to find some other deer, whereby the hounds may be confounded in the change of huts.

If the huntsman hath the *hart* in view, he ought still to draw upon the flot, blowing and hallooing till the hounds are come in. When he finds they are in full cry, and take it right, he then may mount, keeping under the wind and coast, to cross the hounds that are in chase to help them at default, it need require.

The subtilties which are used in hunting a HART at force

A huntsman ought never to come nearer to the hounds in cry, than fifty or sixty paces, especially at the first uncoupling, or at casting off the relays; for if a hart make doublings, or wheel about or across before the hounds, (as he seldom does) if then you come in too hastily, you will spoil the flot or view, and so the hounds, for want of scent, will be apt to overshoot the chase.

But

But if after you have hunted an hour, the huntsman perceives that the *hart* makes out end-ways before the hounds, and that they follow in full cry, taking it right, then he may come in nearer, and blow a recheat to the hounds, to encourage them.

Hereupon the *hart* will frequently seek other deer at layer, and rouse them, on purpose to make the hounds hunt chace, and will lie down in some of their layers flat upon his belly, and so suffer the hounds to over-shoot him; and that they may not either scent or vent him, he will gather up all his four feet under his belly, and will blow or breathe on some moist place of the ground, so that the hounds may pass by him, possibly, though within a yard, and never vent him.

For which cause huntsman should blemish at those places, where they see the *hart* enter into a thicket, to the end, that if the hounds should fall to change, they may return to those blemishes, and put the hounds to the right flot and view, until they have rouzed and found him again.

A *hart* has another way to bring the hounds to change, and that is, when he sees himself closely pursued, and that he cannot shun them, he will break into one thicket after another to find deer, rouzing and herding with them, continuing so to do sometimes above an hour, before he will part from them, or break herd.

Finding himself spent, he will break herd, and fall a doubling and crossing in some hard highway that is much beaten, or else in some river or brook, in which he will keep as long as his breath will permit him; and if he be far before the hounds, it may be then he will use the former device, gathering his legs under his belly, as he lies flat along upon some hard dry place.

Sometimes he will take foil and so cover himself under the water, that you shall perceive nothing but his nose.

In this case the Huntsman must have a special regard to his old hounds, who will hunt leisurely and fearfully, whereas the young hounds will over-shoot their game.

If the hounds happen to be at a default, and hunt in several companies, then it may be guessed that the *hart* has broken herd from the fresh deer, and that the fresh deer have separated themselves also: then notice is to be taken how the old *stanch hounds* make it, and to observe the flot; and where you see any of the old hounds challenge, cherish and encourage that hound or hounds, hastening the rest in to him, crying *bark* to such a hound, calling him by his name,

Here it is to be noted, that they cannot make it so well in the hard highways as in other places, because they cannot have there so perfect a scent, either by reason of the tracks or footing of divers sorts of beasts, or by reason of the sun drying up the moisture so that the dust covereth the flot. Now in such places (such is the natural subtilty of the beast for self-preservation) the *hart* will make many crossings and doublings, holding them long together to make the hounds give over the chase.

In this case, the first care of the Huntsman is to make good the head, and then draw round apace; first down the wind, though deer usually go up the wind; and if the way is too hard to flot, then be sure to try far enough back. Expert hounds will often do this of themselves.

But if a *hart* break out into champaign country, and in the heat of the day too, *i. e.* between noon and three of the clock, then if the Huntsman perceive his hounds out of breath, he ought not to force them
but

but comfort them ; and though they do not call upon the flot or view, yet it is sufficient if they do but wag their tails, for being almost spent it is painful for them to call.

The last refuge of a *hart* that has been sorely hunted, is the water, which in terms of art is called the *foil* ; swimming ofteneft down the ftream, keeping the middle, fearing left by touching any bough by the water fide, he may give fcent unto the hounds.

Whenever you come to a foil, (according to the old rule, *He who will his chase find, let him first try up river and down the wind*) be fure, if your hounds challenge but a yard above his going in, that he has gone up the river ; for though he should keep the very middle of the ftream, yet will that, with the help of the wind, lodge part of the ftream and imbofh that comes from him on the bank, it may be a quarter of a mile lower, which hath deceived.

Therefore first try up the ftream, and where a deer first breaks foil, both man and hound will beft perceive it.

Now the ways to know when a *hart* is spent, are thefe :

First, He will run stiff, high and lompering.

Secondly, If his mouth be black and dry, without any foam upon it, and his tongue hanging out ; but they will often close their mouths to deceive fpectators.

Thirdly, By his flot ; for oftentimes he will close his claws together as if he went at leifure and presently again open them wide, making great glidings, and hitting his dew-claws upon the ground, following the beaten paths without doublings, and sometimes going all along by a ditch fide, seeking some gap, not having ftrength to leap it : yet it has been

often seen, the dead-run deer have taken very great leaps.

A huntsman must therefore govern himself according to the subtilty and craft of the deer, observing the doublings and crossings, and the places where they are made ; making his rings little or great, according to the nature of the place, time, and season ; for hounds are apt to shoot where herbs and flowers have their most lively scent and odorous smell.

Neither is the perfection or imperfection of the hounds to be disregarded. And if these things be done, it will be much if you lose a *hart* by default.

To kill a HART at bay.

It is very dangerous to go into a *hart* at bay, and especially at rutting time, for at that time they are most fierce.

There are two sorts of bays ; one on the land, and the other in the water. Now if the *hart* be in a deep water, where you cannot well come at him, then couple up your dogs ; for should they continue long in the water, it would endanger their furbating or foundering.

In this case, get a boat and swim to him, with a dagger drawn, or else with a rope that has a noose, and throw it over his horns ; for if the water be so deep that the *hart* swims, there is no danger in approaching him ; otherwise you must be very cautious.

As to a *land-bay*, if a *hart* be burnished, then you must consider the place ; for if it be in a plain and open place, where there is no wood nor covert, it is dangerous and difficult to come in to him ; but if he be on a hedge side, or in a thicket, then, while the *hart* is starting on the hounds, you may come softly and covertly behind him and cut his throat.

If

If you miss your aim, and the *hart* turn head upon you, then take refuge at some tree; and when the *hart* is at bay, couple up your hounds; and when you see the *hart* turn head to fly, gallop in roundly to him, and kill him with your sword.

Directions at the death of a HART or BUCK.

The first ceremony, when the huntsman comes in to the death of a deer is, to cry, *ware haunch*, that the hounds may not break in to the deer; which being done, the next is the cutting his throat, and there blooding the youngest hounds, that they may the better love a deer, and learn to leap at his throat: then the *mort* having been blown, and all the company come in, the best person, who hath not taken say before, is to take up the knife that the keeper or huntsman is to lay across the belly of the deer, some holding by the fore-legs, and the keeper or huntsman drawing down the pizzle, the person who takes say, is to draw the edge of the knife leisurely along the middle of the belly, beginning near the brisket, and drawing a little upon it, enough in the length and depth to discover how fat the deer is; then he that is to break up the deer, first flits the skin from the cutting of the throat downwards, making the *arber*, so that the ordure may not break forth, and then he paunches him, rewarding the hounds with it.

In the next place, he is to present the same person who took say, with a drawn hanger, to cut off the head of the deer. Which being done, and the hounds rewarded, the concluding ceremony is, if it be a stag, then one blows a triple *mort*; and if a buck, a double one; and then all who have horns, blow a recheat in consort, and immediately a general *whoop*, *whoop*.

It was formerly termed a wind or winding-horn; the horns, probably, were winding, or compassed,

but afterwards strait horns grew into use, and then they used to say, *blow a horn* and *sound a horn*; and now the *French* and *German* horns are in repute.

In many cases, formerly, leasing was observed; that is, one was held either cross a saddle or on a man's back, and, with a pair of dog-couples, receive ten pounds and a purse, that is, ten stripes (according to the nature of the crime, more or less severe) and an eleventh that used to be as bad as the other ten called a purse.

There are many faults, as coming too late into the field; mistaking any term of art: these are of the lesser sort; the greater are hallooing a wrong deer, or leaving the field before the death of the deer, &c.

Of RABBETS or CONIES.

THE *rabbit* begins to breed at a year old, bears at least seven times a year; she carries her young in her belly thirty days, if she litters in the month of *March*, and as soon as she has kennelled, goes to buck again; neither can they suckle their young till they have been with buck. Tame *rabbets*, above all other beasts, delight in imprisonment and solitariness; they are violently hot in the act of generation, performing it with such vigour and excess, that they swoon, and lie in trances a good while after the act.

The males being given too much to cruelty, kill all the young ones they can come at, therefore the females, after they have kennelled, hide them, and close up the holes in such a manner, that the buck may not find them: they increase wonderfully, bringing forth every month, therefore when kept tame in huts, they must be watched, and as soon as they have

have kennelled must be put to the buck, for they will otherwise mourn and hardly bring up their young.

The huts in which tame *rabbets* are to be kept, should be made of thin wainscot boards, some about two feet square, and one foot high, which square must be divided into two rooms, one with open windows of wire, through which the *rabbit* may feed, and a less room without light, wherein she may lodge and kennel; and a trough, wherein to put meat and other necessaries for her, before each of them; and thus you may make box upon box in divers stories, keeping the bucks by themselves as also the does, unless it be such as have not bred, with which you may let the buck lodge. Further, when a doe has kennelled one nest, and then kennelled another, the first must be taken from her, and be put together into several boxes, amongst *rabbets* of their own age, provided the boxes be not pestered, but that they have ease and liberty.

For the choice of tame rich *conies*, it needs not to look to their shape, but to their richness; only that the bucks must be the largest and richest you can get; and that skin is esteemed the best, that has the equallest mixture of black and white hair together, yet the black should rather shadow the white: a black skin with a few silver hairs, being much richer than a white skin with a few black ones.

As to the profit of tame rich *conies*, every one that is killed in season, that is, from *Martinmas* till after *Candlemas*, is worth five others, as being much better and larger; and when another skin is worth two-pence or three-pence at the most, these are worth a shilling or upwards. Again, the increase is more; the tame ones, at one kindling, bringing forth more than the wild do; besides, they are always ready at hand for the dish, winter and summer, without the

charge of nets, ferrets, &c. and their skins always paying their keeper's expence, with interest.

The best food for your tame *conies*, is the sweetest, shortest, and best hay you can get; one load will feed two hundred couple a year, and out of the stock of two hundred, may be spent in the house as many as are sold in the market, and yet a good stock maintained to answer all casualties. The hay must be put to them in little cloven sticks, that they may with ease reach and pull it out of the same, but so as not to scatter or waste any; and sweet oats, and water, should be put for them in the troughs under the boxes: and this should be their ordinary and constant food, all other being to be used physically; as that you may, twice or three times in a fortnight, to cool their bodies, give them mallows, clover-grass, four docks, blades of corn, cabbage, or colewort leaves, and the like, all which both cools and nourishes exceedingly; but sweet grain should be seldom used, since nothing rots them sooner. Great care must be had, that when any grass is cut for them where are weeds, that there is no hemlock amongst it, for tho' they will eat it greedily, yet it is present poison for them, and suddenly kills them. Their huts also must be kept sweet and clean every day, for their piss and ordure is of so strong and violent a savour, as will annoy themselves as well as those who look after them.

The infirmities to which tame *conies* are subject, are two fold.

1. The *rot*; which comes by giving them green meat or gathering greens for them, and giving them to them with the dew on; therefore let them have it but seldom, and then the dryness of the hay will even dry up the moisture, knit them, and keep them sound.

2. There is a certain rage of madness engendered from

from corrupt blood, springing from the rankness of their keeping, and which is known by their wallowing and tumbling with their heels upwards, and leaping in their huts; to cure which, give them tare-thistle to eat.

Wild *rabbets* do a great deal of damage to vineyards, and all sorts of corn, their teeth sparing nothing that they come near; and in such countries as abound with vineyards, they will eat the young shoots as soon as they begin to appear, and will do them so much damage, that it will endanger their ruin without some proper remedy: to prevent which, take some very small sticks of willow, well dried, dip one end of them into some melted brimstone, and stick the other into the ground; let them be about a fathom distant from each other, and set fire to them and this will prevent the *rabbets* (who hate the smell) from entering into any vineyard, on the side of which those sticks are set: the smell will last four or five days, at the expiration of which you must renew it, and so a third time, insomuch, that in about sixteen days, the shoot of the vine will be so strong as not to be in danger of the insults of those animals.

The ways of taking these creatures are various, particularly such as stray from their burrows may be taken with small greyhounds, or mungrels bred up for that purpose; and their places of hunting are among bushes, hedges, corn-fields, and fresh pastures; and though you should miss killing them, yet they are hereby drove back to their burrows, over whose holes you may lay purse-nets, and then put in a ferret close muffled, which will quickly make them bolt out again to the net, and so are caught.

The *ferret* sometimes finds a *rabbit* asleep, which she surprises and kills, sucks her blood, lies upon her, and sleeps there; in which case you are obliged either to kill her, or wait till she awakes, which will

be often five or six hours; and therefore you must fire five or six times into the hole to awake her, upon which she will come out; but you must always let her sleep an hour before you fire, or else the noise will signify nothing.

When you take any of the does you must turn them loose, that you may not depopulate your warrens, and slit their ears, that they may not be killed by others, who sometimes lie in wait to shoot them.

To force *rabbets* out of their burrows without a *ferret*, take some powder of orpine and brimstone, old shoes, parchment, or cloth, and burn them at the mouth of the burrow, upon that side which the wind blows, and spread your purse-net under the wind. Some put a crab or two into the holes, which will force them out.

Nets to take RABBETS and HARES.

These nets must be made in the same manner as halliers, wherewith they take partridges. The mesh should be an inch and a half broad, made of good strong thread and treble twisted; but if you would make meshes lozenge wise, you must allow four and twenty, and three fathom in length, and let them be well verged with long twisted thread of a brown colour.

But the net with square meshes will do better, in which case they allow five feet in breadth or height, and three or four fathom in length, according to the place; and in this no verging is required.

The first of these nets are to be placed in any path or track, in any coppice or furrow; for *rabbets* and *hares* always fallow the most easy and beaten path;

You must take notice how the wind sets that you may so set the net, that the creature and wind may come together, if the wind be side-ways, it may do well enough, but never if the wind blows over the
net

net into the creature's face; for he will scent both it and you at a great distance, especially a *hare*.

The way of taking wild CONIES.

There are divers ways of doing this, either by small curs or spaniels bred up to the sport; and the places for hunting them who straggle from their burrows, are among bushes and hedges, corn-fields, or fresh pastures; or else by coursing them with small greyhounds: and though they may miss killing them, yet thereby you drive them back to their burrows, and preserve them from being a prey to others.

You may also drive them into their burrows, and spread purse-nets upon the holes, so that when they come out, they will be entangled in them, and so be taken: Now to force them out, it will be proper to have a ferret or two, whose mouths must be couped and muffled up, and so put into the holes, which will cause the conies to bolt out into your purse-nets; for the conies will easily smell the ferrets, and at their approach, (being of a timorous nature) dare not stay to see them.

And for the more certain taking them, it would be proper to have a hay net or two, which should be pitched up at a small distance, against the burrows you intend to hunt.

Of FERRETS.

A Ferret is a little creature that is bred naturally in *England*, but not in *France*, *Germany*, *Italy*, and *Spain*; they are tamed for the use of those who keep warrens and others.

The body of this animal is longer than is proportionable; their colour is variable, sometimes black and white upon her belly; but most commonly of a yellowish sandy colour, like wool dyed in urine.

The

The head is something like that of a mouse, and therefore into what hole soever she can put it, all the body will easily follow.

The eyes are small but fiery, like red hot iron, and therefore she sees most clearly in the dark.

Her voice is a whining cry without changing of it: she hath only two teeth in her nether chap, standing out and not joined and growing together.

The genital of the male is of a bony substance, and therefore it always standeth stiff, and is not lesser at one time than another.

The pleasure of the sense of copulation, is not in the genital part but in the muscles, tunicles, and nerves wherein the said genital runs.

When they are in copulation, the female lieth down or bendeth her knees, and continually crieth like a cat, either because the male claweth her with his nails, or by reason of the roughness of his genital.

The ferret usually brings forth seven or eight at a time, carrying them in her belly for forty days: the young ones are blind for thirty days after they are littered, and they may be used for procreation, as their dam is, within forty days after they can see.

When they have been tamed, they are nourished with milk, or barley-bread, and they can fast a very long time.

When they go they contract their long back, and make it stand upright in the middle round like a bowl: when they are touched they smell like a *martel*, and they sleep very much.

The *ferret* is a bold audacious animal, an enemy to all others but his own kind; drinking and sucking in the blood of the beast it biteth, but eateth not the flesh.

When the warrener has occasion to use his *ferret*, he first makes a noise in the warren to frighten the
conies

conies who are abroad into their burrows, and then he pitcheth his nets; after that he puts his ferret into the earth, having muzzled her mouth, so that she may not seize but only frighten the conies out of their burrows, who are afterwards driven by dogs into the nets or bays, planted for them.

Of OTTERS.

SOME are of opinion that the *otter* is of the *beaver* kind, being an amphibious creature, living both in water and on the land; besides, the outward form of the parts beareth a likeness of the *beaver*; some say, were his tail off, he were in parts like the *beaver*, differing in nothing but habitation, for the *beaver* frequents the salt water as well as the fresh, but the *otter* never goeth to the salt.

Though the *otter* liveth in the water, yet he doth not, like fishes, breathe through the benefit of the water, he taketh breath like other four footed beasts, yet will remain a long time underneath the water without respiration.

If he wants prey in the waters, then he will quit them for the land; and if by painful hunting on shore he cannot fill his belly, he will feed on herbs, snails, or frogs; neither will he take less pains in the water to satisfy his hunger, for he will swim for two miles together against the stream, that so when he has filled his belly, the current may carry him down again to his designed lodging, which is always near the water, very artificially built with boughs, springs and sticks, couched together in excellent order wherein he sits to keep him from the wet.

In the hunting of fish, he often puts his nose above water to take breath: he is a creature of wonderful swiftness and activity in taking his prey, and for greediness,

greediness, takes more than he knows what to do with.

He is a very subtil and crafty beast, and endowed with a wonderful sagacity and sense of smelling, in-somuch that he can directly wind the fishes in the water a mile or two distance from him.

The flesh of this beast is both cold and filthy, because it feedeth on stinking fish, and therefore not fit to be eaten: yet it is eaten in *Germany*, and the *Carthusian* Friars, who are forbidden the eating of all manner of flesh of other four-footed beasts, yet they are not prohibited the eating of *otters*. There are those in *England*, who lately have highly valued an *otter* pie—much good may do them with it.

Of OTTER-HUNTING.

This is performed by dogs, called *otter-hounds*, and with a sort of instruments, called *otter-spears*, with which when they find themselves wounded, they make to land and fight with the dogs, and that furiously, as if they were sensible that the cold water would annoy their green wounds.

There is indeed craft to be used in the hunting them; but they may be caught in snares under water, and by river sides; but great care must be taken, for they bite sorely, and venomously, and if they happen to remain long in the snare, they will not fail to get themselves free by their teeth.

In hunting them, one man must be of one side of the river, and another on the other, both beating the banks with dogs, and the beast not being able to endure the water long, you will soon discover if there be an *otter* or not in that quarter, for he must come out to make his spraints, and in the night sometimes to feed on grass and herbs.

If

If any of the hounds find out an *otter*, then view the soft grounds and moist places, to find out which way he bent his head; if you cannot discover this by the marks, you may partly perceive it by the spraints; and then follow the hounds, and lodge him as a hart or deer.

But if you do not find him quickly, you may imagine he is gone to touch somewhat farther off from the river; for sometimes they will go to feed a considerable way from the place of their rest, chusing rather to go up the river than down it.

The persons that go a hunting *otters*, must carry their spears, to watch his vents, that being the chief advantage; and if they perceive him swimming under water, they must endeavour to strike him with their spears, and if they miss, must pursue him with the hounds; which, (if they be good, and perfectly entered) will go chanting and trailing along by the river side, and will beat every root of a tree, and osier bed, and tuft of bull-rushes; nay, they will sometimes take water, and bait the beast, like a spaniel, by which means he will hardly escape.

Of BIRD-LIME.

Birdlime is stuff prepared after different ways; the common method is to peel a good quantity of holly bark about Midsummer, fill a pan with it, put spring water to it; boil it till the grey and white bark arise from the green, which will require twelve hours boiling; then take it off the fire, drain the water well from it, separate the barks, lay the green bark on the ground in some cool cellar, covered with any green rank weeds, such as *dog thistles*, *hemlock*, &c. to a good thickness; let it lie so fourteen days, by which time it will be a perfect mucilage; then pound it well in a stone mortar, till it becomes a rough
paste,

paste, and that none of the bark be discernable; next after wash it well in some running stream, as long as you perceive the least motes in it: then put it into an earthen pot to ferment, scum it for four or five days, as often as any thing rises, and when no more comes, change it into a fresh earthen vessel, and preserve it for use in this manner. Take what quantity you think fit, put it in an earthen pipkin, add a third part of capons or goose-grease to it, well clarified, or oil of walnuts, which is better, incorporate them on a gentle fire, and stir it continually till it is cold, and thus it is finished.

To prevent frost; take a quantity of as much oil of *petroleum* as you do goose-grease, and no cold will congeal it; the Italians make theirs of the berries of the *mistletoe tree* heated after the same manner, and mix it with nut-oil, an ounce to a pound of lime, and taking it off from the fire, add half an ounce of turpentine, which qualifies it also for the water.

Great quantities of bird-lime are brought from *Damascus*, supposed to be made of *sebestens*, because we sometimes find the kernels, but it is subject to frost, impatient of wet, and will not last above a year or two good. There comes also of it into *England* from *Spain*, which resists water, but is of an ill scent. It is said the bark of our lantona, or way-faring shrubs, will make as good bird-lime as any.

How to use BIRDLIME.

When your lime is cold, take your rods and warm them a little over the fire: then take the lime, and wind it about the top of your rod, then draw your rods asunder one from another, and close them again, continually plying and working them together, till by smearing one upon another, you have equally bestowed on each rod a sufficient proportion of lime.

If

If you lime any string, do it when the lime is very hot and at the thinnest, besmearing the strings on all sides, by folding them together and unfolding them again.

If you lime straws, it must be done likewise when the lime is very hot, doing a great quantity together, and working them before the fire till they are besmeared, every straw having its due proportion of lime; having so done, put them up in cases of leather, till you have occasion to use them.

The best way of making Water BIRDLIME.

Buy what quantity you think fit of the strongest bird-lime you can procure, and wash it in a clear spring water, till you find it very pliable, and the hardness thereof removed; then beat out the water extraordinary well, till you cannot perceive a drop to appear, then dry it well; after this put it into an earthen pot, and mingle therewith capons grease unsalted, so much as will make it run, then add thereto two spoonfuls of strong vinegar, a spoonful of the best sallad oil, and a small quantity of *Venice* turpentine; this is the allowance of these ingredients, which must be added to every pound of strong birdlime as aforesaid.

Having thus mingled them, boil all gently over a small fire, stirring it continually, then take it from the fire, let it cool; when at any time you have occasion to use it, warm it, and then anoint your twigs or straws, or any other small things, and no water will take away the strength thereof.

This sort of lime is best, especially for snipes and feldfares.

Of taking small BIRDS which use hedges and bushes with lime twigs.

The great lime bush is best for this use, which you must take after this manner: cut down the main branch or bough of any bushy tree, whose branch and twigs are long, thick, smooth, and strait, without either pricks or knots, of which the willow or birch tree are the best; when you have prick'd it and trimmed it from all superfluity, making the twigs neat and clean, then take the best bird-lime, well mixed and wrought together with goose grease, or capons grease, which being warmed, lime every twig therewith within four fingers of the bottom.

The body from whence the branches have their rise must be untouched with lime.

Be sure you do not daub your twigs with too much lime, for that will give distaste to the birds, yet let none want its proportion, or have any part left bare which ought to be touched; for as too much will deter them from coming, so too little will not hold them when they are there. Having so done, place your bush in some quickset, or dead hedge near unto towns end, back yards, old houses, or the like; for these are the resort of small birds in the spring time; in the summer and harvest, in groves, bushes, or white-thorn trees, quickset hedges, near corn fields, fruit trees, flax and hemp lands, and in the winter about houses, hovels, barns, stacks, or those places where stand ricks of corn, or scattered chaff, &c.

As near as you can to any of these haunts, plant your lime bush, and plant yourself also at a convenient distance undiscovered, imitating with your mouth several notes of birds, which you must learn by frequent practice, walking the fields for that purpose very often, observing the variety of several birds sounds, especially such as they call one another by.

Some

Some have been so expert herein, that they could imitate the notes of twenty several sorts of birds at least, by which they have caught ten birds to another's one ignorant therein.

If you cannot attain it by your industry, you must buy then a bird-call, of which there are several sorts and easy to be framed: some of wood, some of horn, some of cane and the like.

Having learnt first how to use this call, you shall sit and call the birds unto you, and as many of them light on your bush, step not out unto them till you see them sufficiently entangled, neither is it requisite to run to every single bird, but let them alone till more come, for the fluttering is as good as a stale to entice them more.

This exercise you may use from sun-rising till ten o'clock in the morning, and from one till almost sun set.

You may take these small birds, only with lime twigs without the bush.

Some boys have taken two hundred, or three hundred small twigs, about the bigness of rushes, and about three inches long, and have gone with them into a field where there were hemp cocks: upon the tops of half a score lying all round together, they have stuck their twigs, and then have gone and beat that field or the next to it, where they saw any birds, and commonly in such fields, there are infinite numbers of linnets and green birds which are great lovers of hempseed.

And they flying in such vast flocks, they have caught at one fall of them upon the cocks eight dozen at a time.

But to return; there is a pretty way of taking birds with lime twigs, by placing near them a stale or two made of living baits, placing them aloft that they may be visible to the birds thereabout, who will no sooner

fooner be perceived, but every bird will come and gaze, wandering at the strangeness of the sight, and having no other convenient lighting-place but where the lime twigs are, you may take what number you list of them. But the owl is a far better stale than the bat, being bigger and more easily to be perceived, besides he is never seen abroad, but he is followed and persecuted by all the birds that are near.

If you have not a living bat or owl, their skins will serve as well, stuffed, and will last you twenty years: there are some who have used an owl cut in wood and naturally painted, with wonderful success.

Another method of taking all manner of small BIRDS with BIRDLIME.

In cold weather, that is in frost or snow, all sorts of small birds keep together in flocks, as larks, chaffinches, linnets, goldfinches, yellow-hammers, buntings, sparrows, &c.

All these except the lark, perch on trees or bushes, as well as feed on the ground.

If they resort about your house or adjacent fields, then use bird-lime that is well prepared, and not too old; which order after the following manner.

Put the bird-lime into an earthen dish, adding to it some fresh lard, or capons grease, putting one ounce of either to a quarter of a pound of bird-lime; then setting it over the fire, melt it gently together; but you must be sure not to let it boil, which would take away the strength of the bird-lime, and spoil it.

It being thus prepared, and you being furnished with a quantity of wheat ears, cut the straw about a foot long besides the ears, and lime them for about six inches from the bottom of the ears to the middle of the straw; the lime being warmed that it may run the thinner upon the straw, and therefore be the less

less discernable, and liable to be suspected by the birds.

Then go into the field, and carry with you a bag of chaff, and threshed ears, which scatter together for the compass of twenty yards in width (this will be in a snowy season) then stick up the limed straws with the ears leaning, or at the ends touching the ground, then retire from the place, and traverse the grounds all round about; and by that means, disturbing the birds in other haunts, they will fly to the place where the chaff, &c. has been scattered, and the limed straws set up, and pecking at the ears of corn, and finding that they stick upon them, they will straitway mount up from the earth, and in their flight the bird-limed straw lying under their wings, will cause them to fall, and not being able to disengage themselves from the straw, may be taken with ease. You must not go and take them up, when you see five or six entangled, for that may prevent you from taking as many dozen at a time.

If the birds that fall, where your limed straws are, be larks, do not go near them till they rise of themselves, and fly in great flocks; by this method some have caught five or six dozen at a lift.

Some of these straws may be laid nearer home for taking *finches, sparrows, yellow-hammers, &c.* which resort near to houses, and frequent barn-doors; where they may be easily taken by the foregoing method.

Having performed this in the morning, take away all the lime ears, that so the birds may feed boldly, and not be disturbed or frightened against next morning, and in the afternoon bait the same place with fresh chaff and ears of corn, and let them rest till the next morning; and then having stuck up fresh limed wheat ears, repeat your morning birding recreation.

Of CANARY-BIRDS.

THE *Canary-bird* is an admirable singing bird, of a green colour, that takes its name from the place from whence they first came, viz. from the *Canary-Isles*, and no where else; but of late years, there is a sort of birds that are brought in abundance from *Germany*, especially from *Tirol*, and are therefore called *German* birds; being a much better sort than the other, though their originals are supposed to have been first brought from the *Canaries*.

These birds, that is the cocks, never grow fat, and they cannot be distinguished by some country people from common green-birds; though the *Canary-birds* are much lustier, have a longer tail, and differ much in the heaving of the passages of the throat, when they sing.

But to make a right choice of this bird, and to know when he has a good song; in the first place, let him be a long bird, standing strait, and not crouching, but sprightly like a sparrow hawk, standing with life and boldness, and not subject to be fearful.

These birds being so much esteemed for their pleasing song, are sometimes sold at a high price, at ten or fifteen shillings a piece, more or less, according to the goodness and excellency of their notes, there being a great difference in them.

It is very adviseable before you buy, first to hear them sing, for the buyer will then please his ears; for one fancies a song bird, another a very harsh bird, if he be not so sweet; though undoubtedly the best *Canary-bird*, in general, is that which has the most variety of notes, and holds out in singing the longest.

In order to know whether a bird is in health before you buy him, take him out of the store cage,
and

and put him in a clean cage singly, and if he stand up boldly without crouching or shrinking in his feathers, and looks with a brisk eye, and not subject to clap his head under his wing, it is a sign that he is in good health; but yet he may be an unhealthy bird still.

But the greatest matter is to observe his dunging; if he bolts his tail like a nightingale, after he has dunged, it is a great sign that he is not in perfect health; though he may sing at present and look pretty brisk, you may assure yourself, it will not be long before he is sick; but if his dung be very thin like water, or if a slimy white without any blackness in it, it is a sign of approaching death.

When a *Canary bird* is in perfect health, his dung lies round and hard, with a fine white on the outside and dark within; dries quickly, and the larger the dung is the better it is with him, so that it be long, round and hard; but as to a fed bird, he very seldom dungs so hard, unless he be very young.

Canary-birds are subject to many diseases, as imposthumes, which affect the head and cause them to fall suddenly from the perch, and die in a short time if not speedily cured.

The most approved medicine is an ointment made of fresh butter and capon's grease, melted together, with which anoint the top of the bird's head, for two or three days together, and it will dissolve it, and cure him; but if you have let it alone too long, then after you have anointed him three or four times, see whether the place of his head be soft; and if so, open it gently and let out the matter, which will be like the yolk of an egg; when you have done this, anoint the place, and this will immediately cure him without any more to do.

And if you find the imposthume at any time return, do as before directed; you must also give him *figs*, and let him have a slice or two of *liquorice*, with white sugar candy in his water.

Some are so curious as to breed these birds in *England*, and they have excelled all others; now for the ordering of these birds when they begin to build or are intended for breeding, make a convenient cage, or prepare a room that may be fit for that purpose, taking care to let it have an outlet towards the rising of the sun, where you must have a piece of wire, that they may have egress and regress at their pleasure; when this has been done, set up some brooms, either *heath* or *frail*, in the corners of it, opening them in the middle, and if the room be pretty high two or three brooms may be set under one another, but then you must make partitions with boards over the top of every broom, otherwise they will dung on one another's heads; neither will they endure to see themselves so near each other's nests; for the cock and hen will be apt to fly on an hen that is not matched to them, when they see them just under their nest; which many times causes the spoiling of their eggs and young ones.

In the next place you must cause something to be made so convenient, and of such bigness, as may hold meat a considerable time, that you may not be disturbing them continually, and a proper vessel for water also; and the place where the feed is intended to be put, must be so ordered that it may hang out of the reach of the mice, for they are destroyers of them: you must likewise prepare some stuff of several sorts of things, such as cotton, wool, small dead grass, elk's hair, and a long sort of moss that grows by ditch sides or in the woods, for them to build their nests withal.

Dry them well before you put them together, then mingle all well, and put them up into a net like a cabbage net, hanging it so that they may with ease pull it out.

You must also set perches about the room, and if it be large enough set a tree in the middle of it, that so they may take the more pleasure: and always
re_

remember to proportion your birds, according to the largeness of the room, or rather let it be understocked than overstocked, for they are birds that love their liberty.

When you perceive them to begin to build and carry stuff, give them once a day or in two days at least, a little greens and some coarse sugar: for that will cause a slipperiness in the body, that so the eggs may come forth without injuring the birds; for they die many times in laying the first egg, which is a loss to the breeder: first in respect to his first breed, then to the unpairing of the cock, to which you ought to put another hen, whether he will pair or no: but it would be much better if that cock were taken out, than suffered to continue in the breeding place, especially if it be small; but in a large place with pairs he cannot do that injury, and it will be a difficult matter to distinguish which is the cock of that hen that died, and as difficult to take him in a large place, without doing more injury than the bird comes to: so that it will be best to let him rest to the end of the year, when if you leave but two or three pairs together, it will be the best way to take him out, and match him with another hen, and then put him in again.

Besides, when you find that they have built their nests, the nets that have their breeding stuff in them may be taken away, for they will be apt to build upon their eggs with new stuff if they do not lay presently.

As to the time of their breeding, it is usually three times a year, viz. in *April*, *May*, and *June*, and sometimes in *August*: and as for ordering the young ones, they must not be left too long in the nests; for if so they are apt to grow fullen, and will not feed kindly, therefore they are to be taken out at about nine or ten days old, and put into a little basket and covered over with a net or else they will

be apt to jump out upon the first opening of the basket and be hurt, if they fall down.

They must also be kept very warm for the first week, for they will be very tender, subject to the cramp, and not digest their meat, if they take cold.

And when they are taken from the old *Canaries*, let it be in the evening, and if possible, when the old ones are out of sight; otherwise they will be very apt to take distaste, when they sit again, and have young ones, and ready at every sight to forsake both young and their eggs.

Then as to the preparation of their meat; soak some of the largest rape seed in water for twenty or twenty-four hours; but if the water be a little warm, twelve hours may be enough; then drain the water from the seed, and put a third part of white bread to it, and a little canary-feed in flower, and mix them all together.

Then with a small stick, take up a little at the end of it, and give every bird some, two or three times over; for if you overcharge their stomachs at first, they seldom thrive after it.

For you must know that the old ones give them but a little at a time, and the meat they receive from them, is warmed in the stomach before they give it them, and then all the rape is hulled, which lies not so hard at the stomach, as those seeds which have the skin on.

Neither must their meat be made too dry; for then they will be apt to be vent burnt, because all the feeds are hot.

For it is observable that the old ones constantly drink after they have eaten feeds, and a little before they feed their young ones; and they commonly sit a quarter of an hour feeding them, to keep them warm, that the meat may the better nourish them; therefore when you have fed them, let them be covered up very warm, that their meat may the better digest with them.

Lastly,

Lastly, not to omit the several names of these birds at different times and ages: such as are above three years old are called *Runts*, those above two are named *Ereßes*, and those of the first year that the old ones bring up are called *Branches*; those that are new flown and cannot feed themselves *Pushers*, and those that are bred up by hand *Nestlings*.

Of PARTRIDGES.

PARTRIDGES being naturally a cowardly fearful, simple bird, are easily deceived or beguiled with any device whatever, by train-bait, engine, call, stale, or other enticement.

I shall begin in the first place to consider their haunts, which are not (like the pheasants) certain, but various, any covert will serve their turn, and sometimes none at all.

The places they delight in most, are corn-fields, especially while the corn grows, for under that cover they shelter, ~~ingender~~, and breed: neither are those places unfrequented by them when the corn is cut down, by reason of the grain they find therein, especially in wheat stubble, and the height thereof they delight in, being to them as a covert or shelter. Now when the wheat-stubble is much trodden by men or beasts, they then betake themselves to the barley stubble, provided it be fresh and not trodden by will, in the furrows, among the clots, brambles, and long grass, hide both themselves and covies, which are sometimes twenty in number, or twenty-five; nay I have heard of thirty in a covey.

Now after the winter season is come, and that these stubble-fields are ploughed up, or over soiled with cattle, then do these partridges resort in the up-land meadows, and lodge in the dead grass, or fog under hedges among mole-hills, or under the roots of trees, sometimes they resort to coppices and under-woods, especially if any corn-fields are near adjacent

to, or where grows broom, brakes, fern, or any covert whatsoever.

In the harvest-time, when every field is full of men and cattle, then in the day-time you will find them in the fallow fields which are next adjoining to the corn-fields, where they lie lurking till evening, and then they feed among the sheaves of corn; as also early in the morning.

When you know their haunts, according to the situation of the country and season of the year, your next care must be to find them out in their haunts, which is done several ways. Some do it by the eye only; and this art can never be taught, but learned by frequent experience, distinguishing thereby the colour of the *Partridge* from that of the earth, and how, and in what manner they lodge and couch together; by which method you may come near enough to them, they being a very lazy bird, and so unwilling to take wing, that you may almost set your foot upon them before they will stir, provided you don't stand and gaze on them, but be in continual motion, otherwise they will spring up and be gone.

Another way to discover them, is by going to their haunts very early in the morning, or at the close of the evening, which is called the *jucking-time* which is very loud and earnest, and after some few calls, the hen will answer, and by this means they meet together, which you may know by their rejoicing and chattering one with another; upon hearing of which take your range about them, drawing nearer and nearer to the place you heard them *juck* in; then cast your eye towards the furrows of the land, and there you will soon find where the covey lies.

The best, surest, and easiest way for finding of *Partridges*, is by the call, having first learned the true and natural notes of the *Partridge*, knowing how
to

to tune every note in it's proper key, applying them to their due time and seasons.

Being perfect herein, either mornings or evenings, (all other times being improper) go to their haunts, and having conveyed yourself into some secret place where you may see and not be seen, listen a-while if you can hear the *Partridge* call, if you do, answer them again in the same notes, and as they change or double their notes, so must you in like manner; thus continue doing till they draw nearer and nearer to you: having them in your view, lay yourself on your back and lie without motion, as if you were dead, by which means you may count the whole number.

Having attained to the knowledge of discovering where they lie, the next thing is how to catch them.

First with NETS.

The nets for taking of *Partridges* must be every way like your pheasant nets, both for length and breadth, except that the meshes must be smaller, being made of the same thread, and dyed of the same colour.

Having found out the covey, draw forth your nets, and taking a large circumference, walk a good round pace with a careless eye, rather from than towards them, till you have trimmed your nets, and made them ready for that purpose; which done, you must draw in your circumference less and less, till you come within the length of your net, then pricking down a stick about three feet long, fasten one end of the line to your net, and make it fast in the earth as you walk about, (for you must make no stop nor stay) then letting the net slip out of your hands, spread it open as you go, and so carry and lay it all over the *Partridges*.

If they should be straggling, so that you cannot cover them all with one net, then draw forth another, and do with that as you did with the former, and so a third if there be occasion; having so done,

rush in upon them, who affrighted, will fly up, and so be entangled in the nets.

Secondly, *with BIRDLIME.*

Get the fairest and largest wheat-straws you can, and cut them off between knot and knot, and lime them with the strongest lime. Then go to the haunts of *partridges*, and call, if you are answered, then prick at some distance from you your lime straws, in many cross-rows and ranks, cross the lands and furrows, taking in two or three lands at least, then lie close and call again, not ceasing till you have drawn them towards you, so that they be intercepted by the way by your lime straws, which they shall no sooner touch but they will be ensnared; and by reason they shall run together like a brood of chickens, they will so besmear and daub each other, that very few will escape.

This way of taking *partridges* is only to be used in stubble-fields, from *August* till *Christmas*; but if you will take them in woods, pastures, or meadows, then you must lime rods, as was before mentioned for pheasants, and stick them in the ground after the same manner.

Thirdly *To drive PARTRIDGES.*

The driving of *Partridges* is more delightful than any other way of taking them: the manner of it is thus.

Make an engine in the form of a horse, cut out of canvas, and stuff it with straw, or such like matter; with this artificial horse and your nets go to the haunts of *partridges*, and having found out the covey, and pitched your nets below, you must go above, and taking the advantage of the wind, you must drive downwards: let your nets be pitched slope-wise, and hovering. Then having your face covered with something that is green, or of a dark blue, you must, putting the engine before, walk towards the *partridges* with

with a slow pace, raising them on their feet, but not their wings, and then they will run naturally before you.

If they chance to run a bye-way, or contrary to your purpose, then cross them with your engine, and by so facing them, they will run into that tract you would have them; thus by a gentle slow pace, you may make them run and go which way you will, and at last drive them into your net.

To take PARTRIDGES with a setting-dog.

There is no art of taking them so excellent and pleasant as by the help of a setting-dog, wherefore to proceed to the sport, we shall give you an account what this setting-dog is.

You are to understand then, that a setting-dog is a certain lusty land-spaniel, taught by nature to hunt the *partridges* more than any chace whatever, running the fields over with such alacrity and nimbleness as if there was no limit to his fury and desire, and yet, by art, under such excellent command, that in the very height of his career, by a hem or sound of his master's voice, he shall stand, gaze about him, look in his master's face, and observe his directions, whether to proceed, stand still, or retire; nay, when he is even just upon his prey, that he may even take it up in his mouth, yet his obedience is so far framed by art, that presently he will either stand or fall flat on his belly, without daring to make any noise or motion till his master come to him, and then he'll proceed in all things to follow his directions.

Having a dog thus qualified by art and nature, take him with you where *partridges* haunt, there cast off your dog, and by some word of encouragement that he is acquainted with, engage him to range, but never too far from you; and see that he beat his ground justly and even, without casting about or flying now here, now there, which the mettle of some will do, if not corrected and reprov'd; therefore

when you perceive this fault, you must presently call him in with a hem, and so check him that he dare not do the like again for that day; so he will range afterwards with more temperance, ever and anon looking in his master's face, as if he would gather from thence whether he did good or ill.

If in your dog's ranging you perceive him to stop on a sudden, or stand still, you must then make in to him, (for without doubt he hath set the *partridges*) and as soon as you come to him, command him to go nearer to them, and he goes not, but either lies still or stands wagging his tail, as he would say here they are under my nose, and withal now and then look back; then cease from urging him further, and take your circumference, walking fast, with a careless eye, looking strait before the nose of the dog, and thereby see how the covey lie, whether close or straggling.

Then commanding the dog to lie still, draw forth your net, and prick one end to the ground, and spread your net all open; and so cover as many of the *partridges* as you can; which done, make in with a noise and spring up the *partridges*, which shall no sooner rise but they will be entangled in the net. And if you let go the old cock and hen, it will be a means to increase your pastime.

Of PHEASANTS.

A Pheasant is a bird about the bigness of a cock, having a crooked bill, and feathers of various colours; its flesh is delicious, and much coveted. Now to judge aright of this bird for eating, a cock if young, has a short spur, if old, a sharp small spur; see that it be not pared, if fat it has a vein on the side of the breast under the wing; if new, a fat firm; if you touch it hard with your finger, it will peel; then if young, it has a smooth leg, and a fine smooth grain on the flesh; if old, it has a rugged wrinkled grain on

on the flesh, and full of hairs, like an old yard hen ; so if she be full of eggs, she will have a fast and open vent, if not full, a close vent.

Of PHEASANT-TAKING.

A rural diversion, performed with nets, and only in crowing time, which is about the end of *February*, and in *March*, before they begin to breed : it is done either generally or particularly, the first is, when the whole eye, viz. the old cock and hen, with all their young ones, or powts, they flock or run together in thick woods or coppices, are taken ; or particularly, when none but the old, and such of the young as are of age fit for coupling, are taken ; so that you cannot have any assurance with your nets to strike at more than one or two at a time ; for the pheasant is of a melancholy sullen disposition, and when once they have coupled, do not accompany in flocks as other birds.

In order to the taking *pheasants* with the greater ease, you must be acquainted with their haunts and usual breeding-places, which are in young, thick and well-grown coppices, free from the annoyances of cattle or path ways ; for being of a very timorous nature, they esteem the strength of their coverts their only safety, and do not abide, or breed in open or plain fields, nor under the covert of corn-fields, low shrubby bushes, or in large or tall trees.

Having found their haunts, next you are to find their eye, or brood ; and here you are to observe, that *pheasants* come out of the woods and coverts thrice a day, to feed in fresh pastures, green wheat, or other grain, and that is about sun-rising, about noon, and a little before sun-set. Now the course to be followed, is to go to that side of the wood where you suppose they make their fallies, and watch the places where they come out ; or by searching their haunts ; for you may see the young powts in that season, flock and run together after the hen like chickens. Again, if you

Go to their haunts early in the morning or late in the evening ; you will hear the old cock and hen call their young ones, and the young ones answer them, and accordingly direct your path as near as you can to the place where they are, then lie down as close as possible, that you may not be discerned ; but withal, observe how they lodge together, the better to know how to pitch your nets with greater advantage, both of wind, weather, and place ; otherwise they will betake themselves to their legs, and not to their wings, unless forced to it by a close pursuit.

But the certainest way to find them out, is to have an artificial pheasant-call, wherein a person should be very expert in the imitation of their notes, and the time when, and to what purpose they use them, which calls are much the same as hens use in clucking their chickens.

The chief time for using the call, is in the morning early, or about sun set, at which time they seek their food, and then the note must be to call them to feed ; but though these are the best times, yet the call must be used at other times, only altering the notes for calling them together, or the like.

Having the perfect use of the call, the knowledge of their haunts, and the times to take them, chuse some private place not to be discovered, and then call at first very softly, lest any should be lodged very near you, and be affrighted at your loud note ; but if nothing reply, then raise your note higher and higher till it be extended to the utmost compass, and if any be within hearing they will answer in as loud a note as yours, provided it be tuneable, or else all will be spoiled.

As soon as the *pheasant* answers, if it be at a good distance, creep nearer and nearer, still calling, but not too loud, and as you advance nearer, so will the *pheasant* to you, so that you will come in sight of her, either on the ground or at perch, always imitating her in her true note ; then cease calling, and spread
your

your net between the *pheasant* and yourself, in the most convenient place you can find, making one end of the net fast to the ground, and holding the other in your hand by a long line, so that when any thing strains it, you may pull the net close together, which done, call again, and as soon as you perceive the *pheasant* come under the net, rise up and shew yourself, upon which being affrighted, she will spring, and so become entangled in the net.

In case you have divers *pheasants* answer the call, and that from several parts of the wood, then keep your first station, and as you hear them make towards you, so get your nets ready, spreading them conveniently about you, viz. one pair of nets on one side and another on the other, lying close without any noise, only of your *call*, till you have allured them as aforesaid, that they may be entangled in your nets.

Another way to take *pheasants*, which is reckoned better than the former, and that is, to be provided with a *stale Pheasant*, that is, a live cock, which must be tied down to your net, who by his crowing will draw others in: you must lie concealed in some bush or secret place, and when you seen any *pheasant* come to your net, then draw your line and the net will fall on him and take him.

To take *pheasants* by snares; when you have found their passage out of the wood to their usual places of feeding, there plant a little stake, with a couple of snares of horse-hair, one to lie flat on the ground for their feet, and the other about the height of their head, to take them by the neck; and in case there should be more passes than one, you must do the like to every one of them; then fetch a compass about, and when you are in a direct line with the *pheasant* and the snare that you have fitted, then make a gentle noise to affright them.

If by their dunging and scraping you perceive that they frequent any place, you may then make use of such hedge rows as are directed to take fowl with lines and bird-lime, only plant your running lines from them of a convenient height, and still place one to lie flat to entangle their legs.

To take *pheasants* or *partridges*, and to preserve game in a man's own ground: when you perceive any eye of *pheasants*, or covey of *partridges*, frequent such and such ground, go thither, and in some place thereof, distant from any hedge, bush, or gate, about forty or fifty spaces, pitch up your sticks, each a foot long, in a square, and in the middle of the sticks scatter a few corns, which may serve as a train to draw on the game to the great heap in the middle of the sticks. Now the *pheasants* and *partridges*, coming to feed according to their custom, will soon find out the train, and consequently the great bait; they will not fail to return thither next morning, in hopes of another repast, against which time let it be laid ready for them, and pitch by every one of the four sticks a bush of furz; if they eat the second time, which you may discern by their dung, notwithstanding the furz-bushes, then against the next coming, cross some lines of packthread, in form of a net; and if for all this they come and eat, you may be sure to take them when you please with the following device.

Take away the sticks, furz-bushes, and packthread; and then pitch the net described as follows.

The four main supporters of the net must be fixed strongly in the ground, that the net may be lightly spread on the top: the four sides of the net must be ordered in the same manner as shall be now directed by the example of one of them, lift up the side of the net over the top of the net that is spread, for the side must not lie flat, but stand sloping like a pent-house, supported by small twigs, the bottom fastened in the earth, and the cord or verge of the net resting
on

on them, then place the four furz-bushes at each corner of the net, the more to embolden them, and be sure the running-cord of the net be exact and right, the two ends thereof must be tied to a strong cord, which cord must reach to the next bush or shelter where you lie concealed, but within view of the net; when all is fixed, spread the bait as formerly, but try once or twice how the net will draw, that upon occasion all may be in good order; the best time to wait their coming is at break of day, when they are all busy in eating the bait, then draw your line with a quick motion, and presently fix it to the bush where you are, and make all possible haste to the net to prevent their escaping.

If you would preserve a breed in your grounds, then kill the cocks, and keep the hens till towards Lent, in some convenient room, and then put them out into your grounds, and they will soon find cocks for a breed.

There is another way found most effectually for the taking of *pheasants* in the winter season, provided there is no snow; get a net in the form of a casting net, but larger, with the meshes about five inches wide; then take some pease or wheat, and knowing their haunts, which will be in young coppices of about three or four years growth, in such places seek out their path, and droppings or dung, which paths generally lead from the young coppices to those that are older; and having found out any path, lay about a pint of corn in the place, observing where you lay it, so that they may come to eat; thus do for several days or about a fortnight, by which time they will be so accustomed to it, that they will come to expect some food, and by this means all or most of the *pheasants* in that part will be gathered to it.

Having thus trained them, and that you certainly know when you come in the morning, that they have been there, which will be found by their eating, and
the

the dung, then in such places set your nets, that is, one in one place, which is done thus; tie the top of your nets to a bow, then spread it at the bottom, and peg it down to the ground on all parts except one, which must be raised up above a foot and a half, like an arched door, with an ashen stick, then fix to the said arch several rods made of hazle, with the taper ends to the earth, within the net, so that the *pheasants* may come in by parting the sticks, but not get out again.

Having thus set you nets, which must be made of coarse thread, such as rabbit-hays, and of a tanned colour, by putting them into a tan-pit, cover your nets with bows to prevent them from finding them; and be sure to set them some distance in the wood. The use of the nets is from the beginning of *May* to the latter end of *October*.

Of PIGEONS.

A PIGEON is a domestic bird, very well known, and fed in order to be eaten: I shall chiefly mention those that are bred in pigeon or dove-houses; some there are, for want of the conveniency of such houses, that are bred in coos and dove-cotes; in general we reckon but two sorts of pigeons, the wild and the tame; the tame rough-footed ones differ not much from the wild, only somewhat bigger, and more familiar: the wild usually perch upon trees, being seldom seen on the ground, and are very good food.

By wild *pigeons* are meant, those that breed in woods, sea rocks, &c. and by the tame such as are bred in dove-houses.

There are indeed many sorts of *pigeons*, such as *carriers*, *croppers*, *powters*, *horsemen*, *runts*, *jacobins*, *turbits*, *helmets*, *nuns*, *tumblers*, *barbs*, *petits*, *owls*,
spots,

spots, trumpeters, shakers, turners, and finikins, from which proceed, when they are contrary matched together, bastard bred *pigeons*, such as are called from the *cropper*, or *powter* and the *carrier*, *powting-horseman*; from the *tumbler*, and the *horseman*, *dragons*: of the generality of these I shall say but little, they being only kept for fancy, and not for the profit of the table, tho' the same method is to be used in breeding them.

There are different sorts of *runts*, one called *Spanish runts*, generally of a blood-red, or mottled colour; they are very loose feathered, and large bodied, but bred not so often as the smaller sorts.

Horseman are excellent breeders, and are not easily lost; the common *English runt* is a good sized *pigeon*, and breeds well.

The *pigeon* called the *Leghorn*, is a sort of *runt*, only distinguished by a little wattle over his nostril; he is a full bodied *pigeon*, whose feathers lie close to his body, and is an excellent breeder, and generally of a grizzled colour, ermined round the neck.

To those who keep *pigeons* for the sake of good breeding, I would recommend bastard-bred *pigeons*, such as *powting-horsemen*, *powting-dragons*, from a *powter* or *cropper*, and *Leghorn*; the reason is, such *pigeon* will breed nine or ten pair of young ones in a year, for the little puff of wind thrown in from the *powter*, gives them a heat and mirth: they will continually be playing or courting, and when they have young ones, will feed them well, which a *cropper*, by reason of the bigness of his crop, seldom doth.

Carriers breed but slowly, three or four pair a year for them, is much, by reason of their cold nature: they are constant lovers, and very rarely tread any but their own mate, and therefore hard to match when separate: they will often take three months time.

On the contrary, a *powter* will tread any hen that will let him, at any time: and take him from his
own

own mate, and he will match to another in a day or two; so that bastard-bred *pigeons* are most serviceable for those who breed them to supply the table.

Great care must be taken to make convenient places to breed in, each pair of *pigeons* must be sure to have two nests, with baskets in them is best, for before one pair can go out of the nest, or feed themselves, the old ones will lay and be setting; nay, I have often seen a second pair hatched before the first could feed themselves, and the old ones feed both pair. Be sure when you take the young ones, clean the nest, or put in a clean basket, for cleanliness is a great help.

Never let them want meat, for if you do they cannot be provided with soft meat in their crop when the young hatch, which if wanting, the young ones certainly die; or if you feed the old ones by hand, they will go feed their young immediately with what they get, which they not being able to digest, kills them, so that the best way is to let them have meat always by them in a box, with a hopper in it made for that purpose.

Breed young ones for stock in the spring, those bred in the winter being generally cramped, and never prove good breeders.

The reason why I recommend baskets to breed in, is, tame *pigeons* seldom build their nests, the want of which baskets supply. Be sure take care no vermin comes among them.

Of those bred in pigeon-houses, the grey pigeon, inclining to ash colour and black, is the best; and she generally shews her fruitfulness by the redness of her eyes and feet, and by the ring of gold colour which is about her neck.

There are two seasons of the year wherein you may stock your pigeon-house, the first is in *May*; forasmuch as these first pigeons have much strengthened themselves during the winter, are in a condition soon to yield profit to the buyer. *Secondly* in
August

August, for at that time there are a great number of young pigeons that have been well fed with the corn which their dams, both cocks and hens, have plentifully supplied them with, from the harvest in that season.

You must take care to furnish your pigeon-house according to the bigness of it ; if you put but a few in it, it will be a great while before you will have the pleasure of eating young pigeons, for you must take none out of the pigeon-house before it is well stocked.

Be sure to feed them in hard weather, and in bending time, which is when the corn is in the ear, and keep out the vermin and you will never want stock.

It is good to give them loom, mixed with salt and cummin seed, mixed well, made up in lumps, and dried ; it provokes lust, and helps them in breeding.

Be sure never to let them want fresh water. The best food is tares ; the mornings and evenings are proper times to give them their meat, and never at noon, for fear of breaking their rest, which they usually take at that hour, which roost is very necessary to make them thrive with the food which they eat.

A Secret to hinder Pigeons from quitting the pigeon-house.

Take the head and feet of a gelt he-goat, and boil them together till the flesh separates from the bone ; take this flesh and boil it again in the same liquor, till the whole is consumed ; bruise into this decoction, which is very thick, some potters earth, out of which you are to take all the stones, vetch, dung, hemp, food and corn ; the whole must be kneaded together and reduced to a paste or dough, which form into small loaves about the thickness of two fists, and dry them in the sun or oven, and take care
it

it do not burn ; when they are baked, lay them in several parts of the pigeon house, and as soon as they are set there the pigeons will amuse themselves with pecking them, and finding some taste therein which pleases them, they will keep so close to it that they will not afterwards leave it but with regret. Others take a handful of salt, which they candy, and afterwards put it into the pigeon-house. Some take a goat's head and boil it in water, with salt, cummin, hemp and urine, and then expose it in the pigeon-house, with which they amuse the pigeons. Lastly, there are those who fry millet in honey, adding a little water thereto to prevent its burning too ; this preparation is a repast to them, and will cause them to have such an affection for their ordinary habitation, that they will be so far from abandoning it themselves, that they will draw strange *pigeons* to it.

Pigeons will live eight years, but they are only prolific for the first four years, afterwards they are worth nothing, for when they are once past that age, all they do is to deprive you of the profit you might reap by others that are younger. It is something difficult to know how to distinguish their age.

If you would furnish your table with young ones in the winter, and feed daintily, you must not tarry for them till they can fly, but take them when they are grown pretty strong ; pluck the largest quills out of their wings, which will confine them to their nests ; others tie their feet, or else break the bones of their legs, by which means they will be fat in a very short time, because the substance of the nourishment they receive being then not so much dispersed, turns into fat.

PIGEON-HOUSE, a piece of œconomy, of which a great deal may be said, there being an infinite number of things to be observed, in order to get a pigeon-house that may be advantageous and profitable to you : to begin therefore ; the first thing is to pitch upon

upon a convenient place, of which none is more proper than in the middle of a court-yard, which is supposed to be spacious enough, or without the house, by reason *pigeons* are naturally of a fearful disposition, and the least noise they hear frightens them; hence it is that they always make pigeon-houses with much care, and a great deal of reason, at such a distance, that the rustling noise of the trees shaken by the wind, and the over murmurings of the water, may not affright them.

As to the bigness of the pigeon-house, that depends upon the fancy of those who build them; but it is better they should be spacious than too little; and for its form, the round is to be preferred before the square ones, because rats cannot so easily come at the one as to the other; and the round house is also more commodious, by means of a ladder turning upon an axis, you easily visit all that is within the pigeon-house, and come near the nets without being propped, and take the *pigeons* in them; so that you may effect that by conveniency of this ladder here, which cannot be done in square pigeon-houses.

Now to hinder rats from getting upon the outside into a pigeon-house, they fasten tin plates to a certain height, and in such places where the rats might pass, at the outward angles of a square pigeon house; these plates ought to be a foot high, and raised above half a foot on the sides, that when the rats come to them and cannot catch hold of them, they fall upon the iron spikes which are usually fixed at the bottom of the place where you foresee they may fall.

Moreover, care should be had that the pigeon-house should be placed some small distance from water, that so the *pigeons* may carry it to their young ones; and the same being a little warmed in their bills it will be more wholesome for them than when it is cold.

Care should be taken that the boards which cover the pigeon-house should be well joined together, in such manner that neither rats nor wind can pass through; the covering also should be such that no rain may penetrate through it; especially, it ought to be raised on good solid foundations, the floor good, the building solid, and well cemented, because *pigeons* dung has an ill property of ruining foundations; they must be hard plaistered, and white-washed, within and without, that being the colour most pleasing to the *pigeons*. It must be a constant caution, that there be no window or opening of the pigeon-house to the eastward, but they must always, as much as may, be placed to the south, for *pigeons* love directly to feel the sun, and especially in winter; but if by reason of the situation of the place, you can do no otherwise than make the window of the pigeon-house to face the north, you must always keep it shut close in cold weather, and open it in summer, that the cooling air may have passage into the place, which is refreshing and delightful to *pigeons* in that season of the year.

The pigeon-house should have two cinctures built without, either of free-stone or parget, one of which is to reach to the middle of the pigeon-house, and the other under the window, through which the *pigeons* go in and out; these two inclosures are made on purpose that the birds may rest upon when they return out of the fields.

Of SHOOTING, and SHOOTING FLYING.

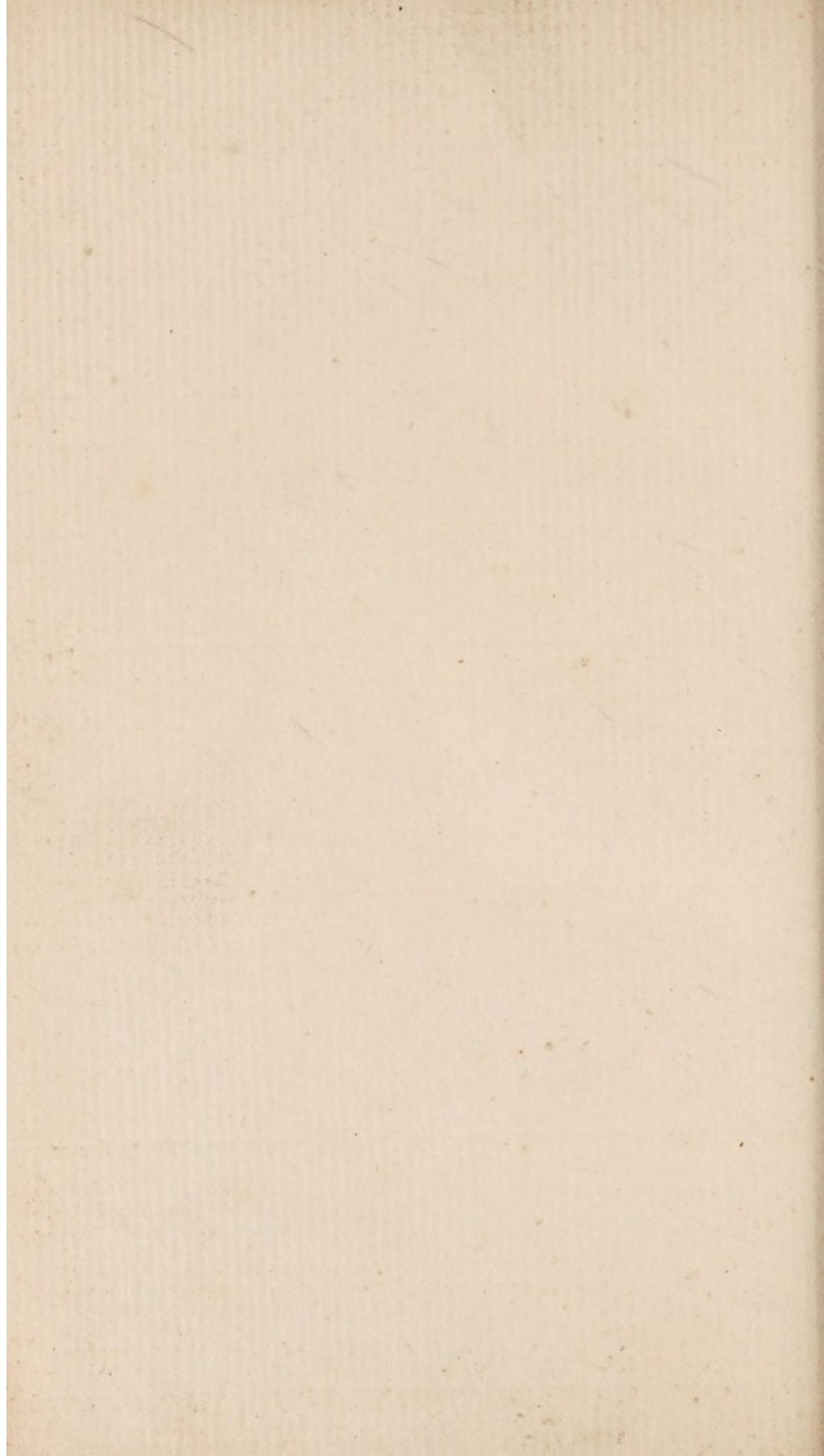
GO early into the field, take with you some rum in a wicker bottle that will hold about a gill: this will keep out or expel wind, cure the gripes, and give spirits when fatigued; but do not take too much, for too much will make your sight unsteady.

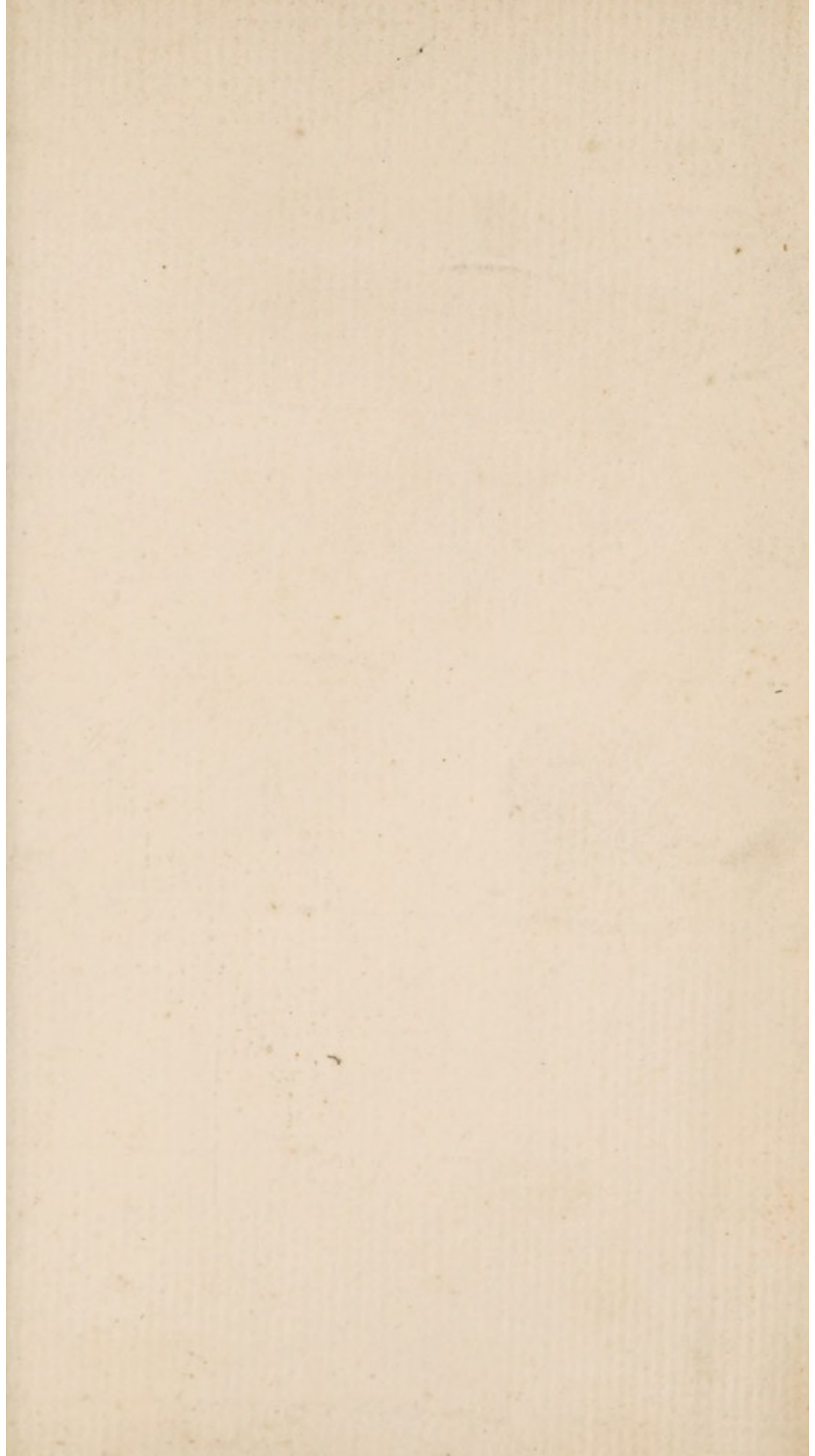
When

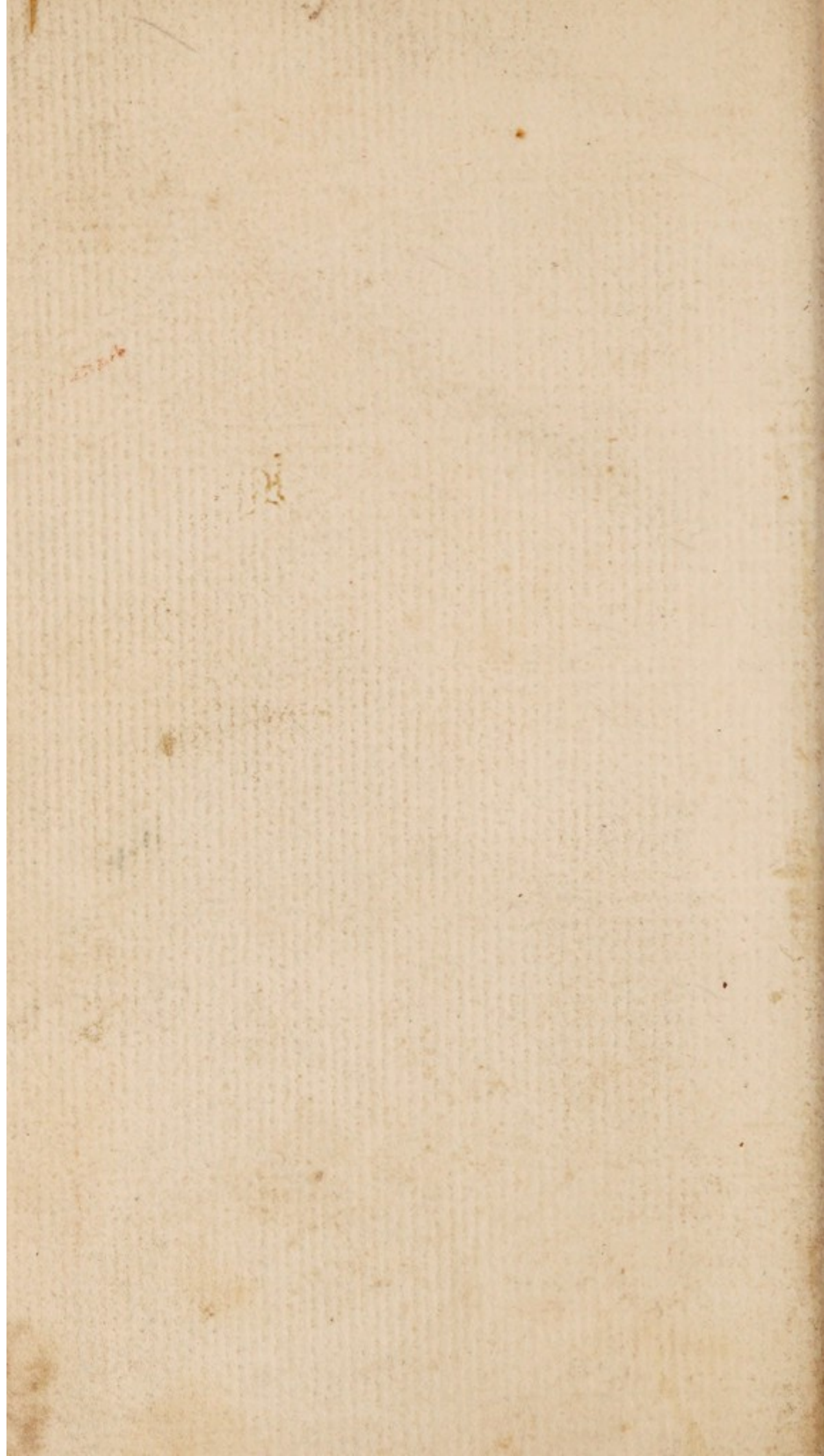
When you have got your gun, a turn-screw, worm, and flints ready, call your pointers, and take with you a partridge-wing; with this carefully clean the touch-hole, then charge and prime, but prime not too full, because the lingering fire will disappoint your aim. Charge in the field, and not the night before; ram the powder well, but the shot lightly; let one third of the charge be powder, and two thirds shot, securing the charge with tow. When you are about to fire, take time, and keep your temper quiet and unruffled as a Stoic. When you have fired, charge again immediately before the air gets into the piece, and do not lose time in charging it, for if it cools it will be covered with a clammy sweat that will render the effect of the charge uncertain. Besides, you should be ready to secure your game, for a wounded pheasant will often rise when you go to take her, and if you are not ready to bring her down again, may totally escape; this, however, rarely happens to woodcocks or snipes. Permit your mark to be distant at least forty yards before you fire; for if the distance be less, you will either miss, the shot not having time to spread, or you will tear it to pieces, but do not let it be much farther, lest you wound too slight to bring the bird down. The flying marks, with respect to their motion and position, are five, 1st, moving towards you in a direct line: 2dly, from you in a direct line; 3dly, cross you; 4thly, circularly; 5thly, obliquely. Let the first mark pass, then take aim by advancing the mouth of the piece above her head. Aim at the second by raising your piece till there is no space between the object and the sight. When you have a traverse or cross mark, wait till it comes in some degree lineal, by getting forty yards to the right or left, for this position will better allow eight feet in the aim, than the other will two inches. When the mark is circular, watch the course, moving round

round with your gun, till you gain the furthest lineal point, and then fire. In firing at the covey, always confine your aim to one. After the harvest, when the birds are become shy, watch their flight soon after sun-set, you will be directed by their call, and the next morning you will know where to find them. When a quail rises, do not be in too much haste to fire during her first flight; her flight is always short, and you may be sure to spring her a second time, when you are aware of her, and better prepared. To shoot larks in frosty weather, load with as much powder as shot, and fire among them as they rise, for their wings being then expanded, you will kill many more than if you fire at them on the ground. Never fire at a mallard till you can get behind him, for no shot can enter his breast. Do not fire full against the wind when it blows hard, for it will then drive the powder into your face; and if it rains, immediately give over your sport. Never blow at the mouth of your piece after it has missed fire, lest some latent spark discharge it through your head. Keep your gun always directed from you, and your thumb on the flint, which you should never hammer, because the sparks may fall into the pan, and kill a bye-stander.









1/2

